



CATO TO ST. JEROME

SELECTIONS FROM
THE FIRST 600 YEARS OF
LATIN PROSE

EDITED BY
H. E. GOULD & J. L. WHITELEY

LAZAR

THIS IS THE PROPERTY OF
SYDNEY TOYS HIGH SCHOOL

NS 5105

200 \$ 19-

[REDACTED]
[REDACTED]
[REDACTED]

WRITING IN
TEXT

[REDACTED]
[REDACTED]
[REDACTED]
[REDACTED]

1900
1901
1902
1903
1904
1905
1906
1907
1908
1909
1910
1911
1912
1913
1914
1915
1916
1917
1918
1919
1920
1921
1922
1923
1924
1925
1926
1927
1928
1929
1930
1931
1932
1933
1934
1935
1936
1937
1938
1939
1940
1941
1942
1943
1944
1945
1946
1947
1948
1949
1950
1951
1952
1953
1954
1955
1956
1957
1958
1959
1960
1961
1962
1963
1964
1965
1966
1967
1968
1969
1970
1971
1972
1973
1974
1975
1976
1977
1978
1979
1980
1981
1982
1983
1984
1985
1986
1987
1988
1989
1990
1991
1992
1993
1994
1995
1996
1997
1998
1999
2000

LRNW, 2.4

MODERN SCHOOL CLASSICS

CATO TO ST. JEROME

CATO TO ST. JEROME

SELECTIONS FROM THE
FIRST 600 YEARS OF LATIN PROSE

EDITED WITH
INTRODUCTION, NOTES AND VOCABULARY

BY

H. E. GOULD, M.A.

AND

J. L. WHITELEY, M.A., PH.D.

AUTHORS OF "A NEW LATIN COURSE" AND
EDITORS OF "MODERN SCHOOL CLASSICS"

13

LONDON
MACMILLAN & CO LTD
NEW YORK · ST MARTIN'S PRESS
1960

*This book is copyright in all countries which
are signatories to the Berne Convention*

*First Edition 1950
Reprinted 1955, 1958, 1960*

MACMILLAN AND COMPANY LIMITED
London Bombay Calcutta Madras Melbourne

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY OF CANADA LIMITED
Toronto

ST MARTIN'S PRESS INC
New York

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

FOREWORD

IN producing this book of extracts from Latin prose authors, we have had chiefly in mind the needs of pupils who are pursuing their studies to VIth form level. We have felt that before they begin a detailed study of their set books, such pupils might profit greatly by a quick reading of a series of passages in a wide variety of styles, thus gaining confidence in tackling their weekly passage of unseen translation. It is also felt that a book of this nature read in the first term, might serve to smooth the passage to the more advanced work.

Moreover as many pupils read no Latin prose book apart from those prescribed for examinations, we hope that many VIth form teachers will welcome a volume designed to give a wide selection from the prose literature of the first 600 years of Latin.

With these considerations in mind we have given more help in the notes than is customary in editions prepared for VIth form use. Finally it may be suggested that, in view of the amount of help provided, some pupils might profitably be given the book for private reading.

H. E. G.
J. L. W.

1949

CONTENTS

	PAGE
FOREWORD - - - - -	v
INTRODUCTION - - - - -	ix
TEXT:	
CATO: HOW TO FARM - - -	i
CICERO: VERRIS IS CHARGED WITH SACRILEGE	9
SALLUST: CATO DEMANDS STERN JUSTICE -	16
LIVY: THE STORY OF SOPHONISBA - -	24
TACITUS: MUTINY AMONGST THE PANNONIAN LEGIONS - - - - -	33
PLINY: THREE LETTERS - - -	42
SUETONIUS: THE ASSASSINATION AND FUNERAL OF JULIUS CAESAR - -	51
ST. JEROME: THE LAST VOYAGE OF ST. PAUL	58
NOTES - - - - - -	6
VOCABULARY - - - - -	148

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
ROMAN FARMYARD - - - -	2
ITALIAN PLOUGHMAN AND TEAM OF OXEN	3
GRAVE-STONE OF A PEASANT - -	4
SHRINE OF THE LARES - - -	5
SEGESTA: RUINED TEMPLE - - -	II
CARTHAGINIAN COINS FROM SICILY - -	15
SCIPIO } AFRICANUS MAJOR - - -	27
CARTHAGINIAN COIN FROM SPAIN - -	30
BUST OF THE EMPEROR TIBERIUS - -	31
CIVITA VECCHIA - - - -	46
RUINS OF THE BATHS OF TRAJAN - -	48
ROMAN SEA-SIDE VILLA - - -	50
ROMAN COINS - - - - -	53
ROME: RUINS OF THE FORUM - -	56
COASTAL SCENERY OF CRETE - -	60
ST. PAUL'S BAY, MALTA - - -	64
ROMAN MERCHANT SHIP - - -	65

INTRODUCTION

THE first name of importance in the history of Latin prose is that of Marcus Porcius CATO ('Cato the Censor', or 'Cato the Elder'), whose dates are 234-149 B.C. Such prose as was written before his time, mostly in the form of speeches, has not come down to us.

Cato was distinguished in many other fields than that of authorship. As soldier, lawyer and statesman, he led a full and busy life. In some ways he seemed to later generations of Romans to typify the race, having both their virtues and their faults in the fullest measure. Particularly was he remarkable for his uncompromising resistance to Greek culture.

Cato wrote speeches and history, of which nothing remains but some fragments. The specimen of his writing given in this book is from an unsystematic series of jottings on farming, *De Agri Cultura*. This highly practical treatise is quite without art, as one would expect from a man whose advice to orators was '*Rem tene: verba sequentur*'—'Stick to the subject: the words will come, never fear.' The selection given is remarkable for the light (perhaps a little lurid) that it throws on the earlier Roman character.

As has been said, Cato's prose is quite spontaneous. Little more than a generation after his death was born Marcus Tullius CICERO, in point of time the second author represented in this book, and, as a master of varied prose styles, without peer among writers of Latin. The Ciceronian 'period', or complex sentence, is a most elaborate structure, in which every word is weighed, the effect being so studied that the closing words of the majority of sentences conform to a rhythmical pattern plainly regarded by the author as ideal.

Cicero's writings in prose include speeches, both political and forensic, letters and philosophical essays. The selection given is from one of his most famous speeches at the Roman bar. The oratorical prose of Cicero is sonorous and eloquent, and ranks high when compared to the best oratory in any language. It is stamped with the marks that characterize prose written to be heard rather than read, particularly with a tendency to use two words in case one word should not 'get home'.

Cicero lost his life in the proscriptions that followed the establishment of the triumvirate by Antony, Octavian and Lepidus. His letters, of which a large collection is preserved, make him almost the best known to us of ancient personalities, and reveal him as a humane and amiable man, but also as a very vain one.

Cicero survived by only a year his great contem-

porary C. Julius CAESAR. Caesar's, too, is an important name in the history of Latin prose, but he is not represented in the following selections, since, perhaps owing to the straightforward nature of his military subject, he is commonly chosen for earliest reading in schools. His accounts of the Gallic and Civil Wars are called '*Commentarii*', 'Notes', and sometimes read like rather hurried jottings made in the scanty leisure of hard-fought campaigns.

Among the satellites of Caesar was S. Sallustius Crispus (SALLUST), who lived from 86-35 B.C. In addition to a work of larger compass which has not been preserved, Sallust wrote two monographs on particular episodes of Roman history, the *Bellum Jugurthinum*, or 'War against Jugurtha', and *De Coniuratione Catilinae*, 'On the Conspiracy of Catiline'. The latter tells of the unmasking by Cicero, as one of the consuls for the year 63, of the revolutionary plot led by the impoverished aristocrat, L. Sergius Catilina. When a few of Catiline's principal associates fell into Cicero's hands their fate was debated in the senate, Caesar pleading for clemency and the letter of the law, Cato the younger for immediate execution. Our selection from Sallust consists of the successful arguments in favour of the capital penalty which he puts into the mouth of Cato. Ancient historians took a more liberal view of their art than is now acceptable and the composition of

imaginary speeches for historical personages was the general practice. Such speeches took the place, in dramatic form, of the analysis of motive which is the modern practice. The ancient historians made such speeches the high lights of their narrative, and it is not fanciful to detect in them a lift of the spirits as they pass from the trammels of fact into the license, universally claimed and universally granted, with which they set about the composition of a speech.

' Sallust is suspected of having been a person of little principle. In his writing of history, too, it seems probable that a political purpose, the justification of the leaders of his own, the democratic, party, interfered with the impartial pursuit of truth, though in the latter regard he came nearer to the ideal than either of his great successors. Sallust modelled himself upon the Greek Thucydides. His prose is consciously artistic, but in a quite different way from Cicero's. The effect is one of economy in words, contrasted with the other's fulness of expression.

When Sallust died in 35 B.C. Titus Livius (LIVY), bearer of the next great name in the history of Latin prose, was twenty-four years old. He came from Patavium (Padua), and his contemporaries, or one of them at least, affected to detect provincialisms in his Latin. Livy may be called a poet who elected to write in prose. The rise of the humble Latin

town of Rome to become the mistress of the known world fired his imagination, and he devoted his life to the composition of an immense history, *Ab Urbe Condita*, which extended to 142 books. Of these only 35 now survive, not all without mutilation.

Livy is no scientific historian. It is the colour and drama of history which attract him and he tells the great stories of Rome with an appreciation almost religious and in ringing, majestic sentences. He is the first author represented in this book to play no part in politics and government. His work pleased the first *princeps*, Augustus, in spite of its republican and anti-Caesarian bias.

We give later some chapters from Livy's XXXth book in which he turns aside from describing the last phase of Rome's long and desperate struggle with Hannibal to record a personal tragedy of love and jealousy.

The Spaniard L. Annaeus SENECA ('Seneca the Younger'), the tutor and eventual victim of Nero, was born in 4 B.C., when Livy had some twenty years of life still before him. The subject matter of his writings, moral philosophy, makes him hardly suitable for inclusion in a school book, but his is a name which cannot be passed over in any consideration of the development of Latin prose. Seneca's style is highly artificial and rhetorical, a reflection not only of Roman education in general, for it was directed chiefly to the end of producing the persuasive

orator, but also of his own paternity, for he was the son of a successful professor of the art.

The chief writings of Cornelius TACITUS, *ca.* A.D. 52-118 are, a biography of his father-in-law, Agricola, a work particularly interesting to British readers from the fact that the subject spent much of his service in this country, a treatise on Germany, and two longer works on Roman imperial history, the *Historiae* (covering the years A.D. 68-96, i.e. Galba to Domitian) and the *Annales* (A.D. 14-68, Tiberius to Nero). Both of these major works are now in an imperfect state. The writings of Tacitus, together with the satires of Juvenal, have given later generations a very dark picture of imperial Rome which is far from being in entire accord with the facts as they present themselves to modern historians. It is perhaps the case that the two most interesting and widely read writers on the period are men of brilliant intellect but jaundiced temper, in whom constitutional proclivities or soured ambition have operated as agents for distortion. In Tacitus the character of Tiberius in particular seems to have been unfairly drawn and the worst possible motive is adduced for his every act.

This said of Tacitus, the rest must be praise. He is a man of majestic intellect, possessing immense power over words. Phrase after phrase is unforgettable, owing partly to the mordancy of the comments themselves, partly to the extreme brevity, carried

almost to the point of obscurity, with which they are expressed. Tacitus is a student of Sallust, but the chief influence on his writing is the poet Vergil and it is certain that his Latin carried much further the divergence between the literary and the spoken languages which had begun as early as the time of Cicero.

The prose of Tacitus is the antithesis of Cicero's. The Ciceronian sentence is so built upon principles of symmetry and balance that its earlier clauses convey more than hints of the later. The aim of Tacitus seems on the other hand to be to surprise. There is a most studied avoidance of parallelism. If Cicero and Livy paint with the loaded brush, Tacitus carves with the finest and sharpest of chisels. In this book Tacitus is represented by his account, from the *Annales*, of the quelling of a dangerous mutiny in the army of Pannonia.

The friend and junior contemporary of Tacitus, C. Plinius Caecilius Secundus, ('PLINY the Younger') who, like Tacitus, came safely through the reign of the tyrant Domitian and attained the consulship, was the author of a collection of letters, rather obviously written with an eye to eventual publication. They are not the work of a first-rate mind, but contain much of interest, and reveal a kindly and virtuous, if somewhat vain and humourless personality, with a strong admiration for Cicero, expressed in the the sincerest form of flattery

imitation. Pliny is represented in this book by three of his letters.

In the reign of Hadrian was published, in A.D. 120, the *Lives of the Twelve Caesars*, by Gaius Suetonius Tranquillus. This again is not a great work. Suetonius is an ordinary man. He has a perfect knowledge of what interests ordinary men, and he tells it, without pretensions to literary elegance. The 'Lives' are full of details to delight the curious, recorded by a born gossip. In the present work Suetonius' account of the assassination and funeral of Julius Caesar is given.

With the last author included among these selections, ST. JEROME, the wheel of style has come full circle. We began with Cato, writing in the baldest fashion a handbook for his fellow farmers. After Cato Greek influence begins to have only less effect on Latin prose writers than on the Roman poets. More and more attention is paid to the *manner* of writing, more and more the literary language diverges from the speech of every day. But the purpose of St. Jerome (Hieronimus), writing about A.D. 400, is akin to that of Cato. He does not write to persuade a panel of educated jurors, nor to please the noble who sought to pass in the study a life that under the republic would have been devoted to politics and action. Jerome aims to make the Scriptures intelligible to the growing Christian community, embracing men and women

from every province of the vast empire and acquainted with many different sorts of Latin. Moreover he is translating, and his aim as a translator being fidelity, there is inevitably a strong colouring of his Hebrew and Hellenistic originals in the prose which he writes.

The story, from the Acts of the Apostles, of St. Paul's voyage, as a prisoner, to Rome, is given as the concluding selection in this book. The words that occur in it are not included in the vocabulary, since it is familiar and so readily found in translation. But a few notes are given, both on the matter and the manner of the extract.

It must not be imagined that the history of Latin prose ends with St. Jerome, or even that the tendencies of his style, such as it is, are final. There were Christian writers of importance before him as well as after. But the language in which they wrote was a Latin increasingly denatured by the transference to it of Greek and Hebrew habits of thought and by the growth of varieties of Latin peculiar to the several provinces. It is with the Renaissance, when the language became the *lingua franca* of learned Europe, that something of the Ciceronian purity was restored to it by such writers as Petrarch, Erasmus and Thomas More.

CATO

(MARCUS PORCIUS CATO)

Soldier, Orator, Statesman, 234-149 B.C.

HOW TO FARM

[THE following extract from Cato's treatise on agriculture covers the following four topics: advice to an intending purchaser on the choice of a farm; how to conduct an inspection of one's property; the duties of the agent, who operates the estate for the owner; the duties of the housekeeper.

Bear in mind as you read the extract that these are rough, unplanned jottings on one only of the activities of a very busy man, a man of affairs whose long life covered Rome's wars not only with Hannibal, but also with two of the three successors to Alexander's vast conquests, the states of Macedonia and Syria.

In the task of making out the meaning of the Latin try not to lose sight of the wood in your preoccupation with the trees. Picture the insensitive, unimaginative nature of a man who could couple, in a single breath, old iron and old slaves as ripe for selling. Notice, too, how close some of his advice is to our own popular wisdom—'example is better than

precept ', ' don't buy a pig in a poke ', ' Satan finds some mischief still for idle hands to do '. And observe the attitude to religion, which must be kept in its place, and is the master's business anyway.]

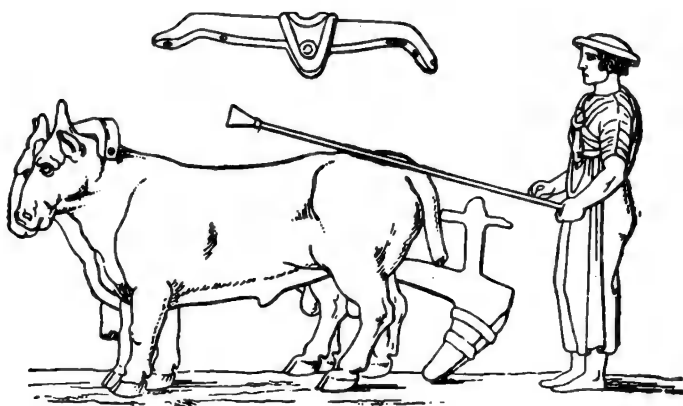
Praedium quom parare cogitabis, sic in animo habeto, uti ne cupide emas neve opera tua parcas viser⁶ et ne satis habeas semel circumire. Quotiens ibis, totiens magis placebit quod bonum erit. Vicini



ROMAN FARMYARD
(from a painted relief in the Vatican)

5 quo pacto niteant, id animum advertito: in bona regione bene nitere oportebit. Et uti eo introeas et circumspicias uti inde exire possis. Uti bonum caelum habeat, ne calamitosum siet, solo bono, sua virtute valeat. Si poteris, sub radice montis siet,
10 in meridiem spectet, loco salubri, operariorum copia siet, bonumque aquarium, oppidum validum prope siet aut mare aut amnis, qua naves ambulant, aut via bona celebrisque. Siet in his agris, qui non saepe

dominos mutant: qui in his agris praedia venderint, eos pigeat vendidisse. Uti bene aedificatum 15
siet. Caveto alienam disciplinam temere contemnas. De domino bono colono bonoque aedificatore melius emetur. Ad villam cum venies, videto vasa torcula et dolia multane sient: ubi non erunt, scito pro ratione fructum esse. Videto sumptuosus ager ne 20
siet. Scito idem agrum quod hominem, quamvis quaestuosus siet, si sumptuosus siet, relinqui non



ITALIAN PLOUGHMAN AND TEAM OF OXEN,
with front view of *iugum* (above)

multum. Praedium quod primum siet, si me rogabis, sic dicam: de omnibus agris optimoque loco iugera agri centum; vinea est prima, si vino bono et 25
multo est, secundo loco hortus inriguus, tertio salictum, quarto oletum, quinto pratum, sexto campus frumentarius, septimo silva caedua, octavo arbustum, nono glandaria silva.

Pater familias ubi ad villam venit, ubi larem 30
familiarem salutavit, fundum eodem die, si potest, circumeat; si non eodem die, at postridie. Ubi

cognovit quomodo fundus cultus siet operaque quae
 facta infectaque sient, postridie eius diei vilicum
 35 vocet, roget quid operis siet factum, quid restet,
 satisne temperi opera sient confecta, possitne quae
 reliqua sient conficere, et quid factum vini, frumenti
 aliarumque rerum omnium. Ubi ea cognovit, ratio-
 nem inire oportet operarum, dierum.] Si ei opus non



GRAVE-STONE OF A PEASANT,
 inscribed ' To Leo, in peace, who
 lived for 30 years '

(Note the implements—spade, pruning knife, hoe)

40 apparet, dicit vilicus sedulo se fecisse, servos non
 valuisse, tempestates malas fuisse, servos aufugisse,
 opus publicum effecisse—ubi eas aliasque causas
 multas dixit, ad rationem operum operarumque
 vilicum revoca. Cum tempestates pluviae fuerint,
 45 quae opera per imbrem fieri potuerint, dolia lavari,
 picari, villam purgari, frumentum transferri, stercus
 foras efferri, stercilinum fieri, semen purgari, funes
 sarciri, novos fieri; centones, cuciliones familiam
 oportuisse sibi sarcire. Per ferias potuisse fossas



SHRINE OF THE LARES
from a house at Pompeii

(The Lares are the figures above, represented as pouring wine)

veteres tergeri, viam publicam muniri, vepres recidi, 50
hortum fodiri, pratum purgari, virgas vinciri, spinas
runcari, expinsi far, munditias fieri. Cum servi
aegrotarint, cibaria tanta dari non oportuisse. Ubi
ea cognita aequo animo sint, quae reliqua opera sint

55 curare uti perficiantur: rationes putare argentariam,
 frumentariam, pabuli causa quae parata sunt; ratio-
 nem vinariam, oleariam, quid venierit, quid exactum
 siet, quid reliquum siet, quid siet quod veneat. / Si
 quid desit in annum, uti parétur: quae supersint, ut
 60 véneant: quae opus sint locato, locentur: quae opera
 fieri velit et quae locari velit, uti imperet et ea
 scripta relinquat. Pecus consideret. Auctionem uti
 faciat: vendat oleum, si pretium habeat, vinum,
 frumentum quod supersit vendat; boves vetulos,
 65 armenta delicula, oves deliculas, lanam, pelles.
 plostrum vetus, ferramenta vetera, servum senem,
 servum morbosum, et siquid aliut supersit, vendat.
 Patrem familias vendacem, non emacem esse oportet.

Haec erunt vilici officia. Disciplina bona utatur
 70 Feriae serventur. Alieno manum abstineat, sua
 servet diligenter. Litibus familiae supersedeat; si
 quis quid deliquerit, pro noxa bono modo vindicet.
 Familiae male ne sit, ne algeat, ne esuriat; opere
 bene exerceat, facilius malo et alieno prohibebit.
 75 Vilicus si nolet male facere, non faciet. Si passus
 erit, dominus impune ne sinat esse. Pro beneficio
 gratiam referat, ut aliis recte facere libeat. Vilicus
 ne sit ambulator, sobrius siet semper, ad cenam
 nequo eat. Familiam exerceat, consideret, quae
 80 dominus imperaverit fiant. Ne plus censeat sapere
 se quam dominum. Amicos domini, eos habeat sibi
 amicos. Cui iussus siet, auscultet. Rem divinam nisi
 Conpitalibus in conpito aut in foco ne faciat. In-
 the Compitalia cross roads hearth

^{no-one} iussu domini credat nemini: quod dominus crediderit
^{sowing seed} exigat. ^{food} Satui semē, ^{spelt} cibaria, ^{barley} far, vinum, oleum 85
^{land} mutuum dederit nemini. Duas aut tres familias
^{things given you as} habeat, unde ^{pragmatically} utenda roget et quibus det, praeterea
 nemini. Rationem cum domino crebro putet. Opera-
 rium, mercennarium, politorem diutius eundem ne
 habeat die. Ne quid emisse velit insciente domino, 90
 neu quid dominum celavisse velit. ^{parasite} Parāsītum ne-
^{not a} quem habeat. ^{seer} Haruspīcē, ^{augur} augurē, ^{diviner} hariolum,
^{Chaldean} Chaldaeum nequem consuluisse velit.) ^{seget} Segetem ne
 defrudet, nam id infelix est. Opus rusticum omne
 curet uti sciat facere, et id faciat saepe, dum ne 95
 lassus fiat; si fecerit, scibit in mente familiae quid
 sit, et illi animo aequiore facient. Si hoc faciet,
^{less} minus libebit ambulare et ^{will} valebit rectius et dormibit
^{liberly} libentius. Primus cubitu surgat, postremus cubitum
 eat. Prius villam videat clausa uti siet, et uti suo 100
 quisque loco cubet et uti iumenta pabulum habeant.

Vilicae quae sunt officia curato faciat. Si eam
 tibi dederit dominus uxorem, ea esto contentus. Ea
 te metuat facito. Ne nimium luxuriosa siet. Vicinas
 aliasque mulieres quam minimum utatur neve 105
 domum neve ad se recipiat. Ad cenam nequo eat neve
 ambulatrix siet. Rem divinam ne faciat neve man-
 det, qui pro ea faciat, iniussu domini aut dominae.
 Scito dominum pro tota familia rem divinam facere.
 Munda siet; villam conversam mundeque habeat; 110
 focum purum circumversum cotidie, priusquam cubi-
 tum eat, habeat. Kalendis, Idibus, Nonis, festus

dies cum erit, coronam in focum indat, per eosdem-
que dies lari familiari pro copia supplicet. Cibum
115 tibi et familiae curet uti coctum habeat. Gallinas
multas et ova uti habeat. Farinam bonam et far
suptile sciat facere.

CICERO

(MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO)

Roman lawyer, statesman, and man of letters

106-43 B.C.

VERRES IS CHARGED WITH SACRILEGE

(In Verrem Act. II Lib. iv, Sections 72-79

with omissions)

[DURING his governorship of Sicily (73-71 B.C.) as propraetor, Verres' behaviour had been so irresponsible and extortionate that the Sicilians decided to prosecute him in Rome, and asked Cicero to undertake the prosecution, because, during an official stay in the island in 75 B.C. as quaestor, he had won their favour and offered to support their interests. In spite of powerful opposition on the part of influential friends of Verres, Cicero prepared his case with such thoroughness and vigour that the defence collapsed after one day's hearing, and Verres accepted defeat and went into exile.

There are seven Verrine orations, of which only two were delivered, the rest being published after the trial.

The extract which has been selected for this book describes how Verres outraged the feelings of the province of Sicily by carrying off as loot a famous

statue of Diana which for generations had been regarded by the inhabitants of Segesta with the greatest awe and veneration.

As an orator, popular exponent of Greek philosophy, and a distinguished man of letters, Cicero has had an enormous influence on European civilisation. In moulding the Latin language to give full expression to his many and varied interests as statesman and philosopher, Cicero bequeathed to his countrymen and posterity a magnificent instrument, the structural basis of which was the period, with its carefully balanced subordinate clauses and antitheses. His Latin prose was thus destined to become the basis of literary expression in the languages of Europe, in that a study of his prose style became an important element in the education of every European gentleman and scholar and helped to make Latin the international language of diplomacy, of the church, and of secular scholarship.

Similarly the influence of Cicero's thought on Europe has been immense, for it was through his philosophical works, either in the original or in translation, that Europe became familiar with the thought of the various Greek philosophical schools.]

Segesta est oppidum pervetus in Sicilia, iudices, quod ab Aenea fugiente a Troia atque in haec loca veniente conditum esse demonstrant. Itaque Segestani non solum perpetua societate atque amicitia,



SEGESTA: RUINED TEMPLE

verum etiam cognatione se|cum populo Romano 5
 coniunctos esse|arbitrantur. Hoc quondam oppi-
 dum, cum illa civitas cum Poenis suo nomine|ac sua
 sponte bellaret, a Carthaginiensibus vi captum|atque
 deletum est, omniaque quae ornamēto urbi esse
 possent|Carthaginem sunt|ex illo loco, deportata. 10
 Fuit apud Segestanos|ex aere Dianae, simulacrum,
 cum summa|atque antiquissima praeditum religione
 tum singulari opere artificioque perfectum. Hoc
 translatum Carthaginem locum tantum hominesque
 mutarat, religionem quidem pristinam conservabat: 15
 nam propter eximiam pulchritudinem etiam hostibus
 digna quam sanctissime colerent|videbatur. Aliquot
 saeculis post P. Scipio Carthaginem cepit: qua in
 victoria convocatis Siculis omnibus, quod diutissime,
 saepissimeque Siciliam vexatam a Carthaginiensibus 20

esse cognorat, iubet omnia conquiri; pollicetur sibi
magnae curae fore, ut omnia civitatibus, quae cuius-
que fuissent, restituerentur. Tum alia Geleñsibus,
alia Agrigentinis, in quibus etiam ille nobilis taurus,
25 quem crudelissimus omnium tyrannorum Phalaris
habuisse dicitur, quo vivos supplicii causa dimittere
homines et subicere flammam solebat. Illo tempore
Segestanis maxima cum cura haec ipsa Diana, de
qua dicimus, redditur; reportatur Segestam, in suis
30 antiquis sedibus summa cum gratulatione civium et
laetitia reponitur. Haec erat posita Segestae sane
excelsa in basi, in qua grandibus litteris P. Africani
nomen erat incisum eumque Carthagine capta
restituisse perscriptum. Colebatur ab omnibus, ab
35 omnibus advenis visebatur; cum quaestor essem,
nihil mihi ab illis est demonstratum prius. Erat
admodum amplum et excelsum signum cum stola;
verum tamen inerat in illa magnitudine aetas atque
habitus virginalis; sagittae pendebant ab umero;
40 sinistra manu retinebat arcum, dextra ardentem
facem praeferebat. Hanc cum iste sacrorum omnium
et religionum hostis praedoque vidisset, quasi illa
ipsa face percussus esset, ita flagrare cupiditate
atque amentia coepit. Imperat magistratibus, ut
45 eam demoliantur et sibi dent; nihil sibi gratius
ostendit futurum. Illi vero dicere sibi id nefas esse
sesequae cum summa religione tum summo metu
legum et iudiciorum teneri. Iste tum petere ab
illis, tum minari, tum spem, tum metum ostendere.

Opponebant illi nomen interdum P. Africani; populi 50
 Romani illud esse dicebant: nihil se in eo potestatis
 habere quod imperator clarissimus urbe hostium
 capta monumentum victoriae populi Romani esse
 voluisset. Cum iste nihilo remissius atque etiam
 multo vehementius instaret cotidie, res agitur in 55
 senatu: vehementer ab omnibus reclamatur. Itaque
 illo tempore ac primo istius adventu pernegatur.
 Postea, quidquid erat oneris in nautis remigibusque
 exigendis, in frumento imperando, Segestanis praeter
 ceteros imponebat, aliquanto amplius quam ferre 60
 possent. *Resides* Praeterea magistratus eorum evocabat,
 optimum quemque et nobilissimum ad se arcessebat,
 circum omnia provinciae fora rapiebat; singulatim
 uni cuique calamitati fore se denuntiabat, universis
 se funditus eversurum esse illam civitatem mina- 65
 batur. Itaque aliquando multis malis magnoque
 metu victi Segestani praetoris imperio parendum
 esse decreverunt. Magno cum luctu et gemitu totius
 civitatis, multis cum lacrimis et lamentationibus
 virorum mulierumque omnium simulacrum Dianae 70
 tollendum locatur.

Videte quanta religio fuerit apud Segestanos.
 Repertum esse, iudices, scitote neminem, neque
 liberum neque servum, neque civem neque pere-
 grinum qui illud signum auderet attingere; barbaros 75
 quosdam Lilybaeo scitote adductos esse operarios;
 ei denique illud ignari totius negotii ac religionis
 mercede accepta sustulerunt. Quod cum ex oppido

exportabatur, quem conventum mulierum factum
 80 esse arbitramini? quem fletum maiorum natu?
 quorum non nulli etiam illum diem memoria tene-
 bant, cum illa eadem Diana Segestam Carthagine
 revecta victoriam populi Romani reditu suo nuntias-
 set. Quam dissimilis hic dies illi tempori videbatur!
 85 Tum imperator populi Romani, vir clarissimus, deos
 patrios reportabat Segestanis, ex urbe hostium
 recuperatos: nunc ex urbe sociorum praetor eiusdem
 populi turpissimus atque impurissimus eosdem illos
 deos nefario scelere auferebat. Quid hoc tota Sicilia
 90 est clarius, quam omnis Segestae matronas et vir-
 gines convenisse, cum Diana exportaretur ex oppido,
 unxisse unguentis, ^{love}complexisse coronis et floribus,
^{as far as}ture odoribus incensis usque ad ^{boundary}agri finis prosecutas
 esse? Hanc tu tantam religionem si tum in imperio
 95 propter cupiditatem atque audaciam non ^{tear}pertime-
 scebas, ne nunc quidem in tanto tuo liberorumque
 tuorum periculo perhorrescis? Quem tibi aut homi-
 nem invitis dis immortalibus aut vero deum tantis
 eorum religionibus violatis auxilio ^{esse}futurum putas?
 100 Tibi illa Diana in pace atque in otio religionem
 nullam attulit? Quae cum duas urbis, in quibus
 locata fuerat, captas incensasque vidisset, bis ex
 duorum bellorum flamma ferroque servata est, quae
 Carthaginensium victoria loco ^{peace, let's see}mutato religionem
 105 non amisit, P. Africani virtute religionem simul
 cum loco recuperavit. Quo quidem scelere suscepto
 cum inanis esset basis et in ea P. Africani nomen



SILVER COINS

STRUCK BY THE CONQUERING CARTHAGINIANS IN SICILY
(The female head is possibly that of Queen Dido. The other specimen shows the head of a horse and a palm-tree)

incisum, res indigna atque intoleranda videbatur omnibus, non solum religiones esse violatas, verum etiam P. Africani, viri fortissimi, rerum gestarum 110 gloriam, memoriam virtutis, monumenta victoriae C. Verrem sustulisse. Quod cum isti renuntiaretur, de basi ac litteris, existimavit homines in oblivionem totius negotii esse venturos, si etiam basim, tamquam indicem sui sceleris, sustulisset: itaque tollen- 115 dam istius imperio locaverunt; quae vobis locatio ex publicis litteris Segestanorum priore actione recitata est.

SALLUST
(GAIUS SALLUSTIUS CRISPUS)
Historian, 86-34 B.C.

CATO DEMANDS STERN JUSTICE.
(*Bellum Catilinae, Chs. lii-liv*)

[IN 63 B.C. the mounting strains and stresses within the out-of-date political and economic machinery of Rome and her growing empire had encouraged L. Sergius Catilina ('Catiline'), a bankrupt aristocrat with frustrated hopes of power, to form a revolutionary plot aimed at overthrowing the existing constitution.

Cicero, one of the consuls for the year, received timely warning of the conspiracy through an informer, and arrested a number of Catiline's principal associates. In a debate subsequently held in the senate to decide the fate of these prisoners Julius Caesar, whose own political connections were such as to excite the suspicion that he was not without sympathy for the plotters, made an effective speech deprecating capital punishment. M. Porcius Cato, a descendant of our first author, and an uncompromising conservative, then swung the senate to a decision in favour of execution.

The following selection gives Sallust's version of this speech, together with a comparison of the characters of Caesar and Cato. The speech probably contains more of Sallust than of Cato, but is true enough to all that we know of the latter's rigid personality.]

Postquam Caesar dicundi finem fecit, ceteri verbo alius alii varie adsentiebantur. At M. Porcius Cato rogatus sententiam huiusce modi orationem habuit:

‘ Longe mihi alia mens est, patres conscripti, cum res atque pericula nostra considero, et cum sententias nonnullorum ipse mecum reputo. Illi mihi disseruisse videntur de poena eorum qui patriae, parentibus, aris atque focis suis bellum paravere; res autem monet cavere ab illis, magis quam quid in illos statuamus consultare. Nam cetera maleficia tum persequare ubi facta sunt; hoc nisi provideris ne accadat, ubi evenit, frustra iudicia implores: capta urbe nihil fit reliqui victis. Sed, per deos immortales, vos ego appello, qui semper domos, villas, signa, tabulas vostras pluris quam rem publicam fecistis: si ista, cuiuscumque modi sunt quae amplexamini, retinere—si voluptatibus vestris otium praebere voltis, expergiscimini aliquando et capessite rem publicam. Non agitur de vectigalibus neque de sociorum iniuriis: libertas et anima nostra in dubio est.]

‘ Saepe numero, patres conscripti, multa verba in

hoc ordine feci, saepe de luxuria atque avaritia
 nostrorum civium questus sum, multosque mortales
 25 ea causa advorsos habeo. Qui mihi atque animo
 meo nullius umquam delicti gratiam recissem, haud
 facile alterius libidini male facta condonabam. Sed
 ea tametsi vos parvi pendebatis, tamen res publica
 firma erat, opulentia negligentiam tolerabat. Nunc
 30 vero non id agitur, bonisne an malis moribus
 vivamus, neque quantum aut quam magnificum
 imperium populi Romani sit, sed haec, cuiuscumque
 modi videntur, nostra an nobiscum una hostium
 futura sint. Hic mihi quisquam mansuetudinem
 35 et misericordiam nominat? Tam pridem equidem
 nos vera vocabula rerum amisimus. Quia bona
 aliena largiri liberalitas, malarum rerum audacia
 fortitudo vocatur, eo res publica in extremo sita est.
 Sint sane, quoniam ita se mores habent, liberales ex
 40 sociorum fortunis, sint misericordes in furibus aerarii:
 ne illi sanguinem nostrum largiantur et, dum paucis
 sceleratis parcunt, bonos omnes perditum eant.

‘ Bene et composite C. Caesar paulo ante in hoc
 ordine de vita et morte disseruit, credo, falsa existi-
 45 mans ea quae de inferis memorantur, divorso itinere
 malos a bonis loca taetra, inculta, foeda atque formi-
 dulosa habere. Itaque censuit pecunias eorum publi-
 candas, ipsos per municipia in custodiis habendos,
 videlicet timens ne, si Romae sint, aut a popularibus
 50 coniurationis aut a multitudine conducta per vim
 eripiantur. Quasi vero mali atque scelesti tantum

modo in urbe et non per totam Italiam sint, aut non ibi plus possit audacia, ubi ad defendendum opes minores sunt. Qua re vanum equidem hoc consilium est, si periculum ex illis metuit: sin in tanto 55 omnium metu solus non timet, eo magis refert me mihi atque vobis timere. Qua re cum de P. Lentulo ceterisque statuetis, pro certo habetote vos simul de exercitu Catilinae et de omnibus coniuratis decernere. Quanto vos attentius ea agetis, tanto illis 60 animus infirmior erit: si paululum modo vos languere viderint, iam omnes feroces aderunt.

‘Nolite existimare maiores nostros armis rem publicam ex parva magnam fecisse. Si ita res esset, multo pulcherrimam eam nos haberemus: quippe 65 sociorum atque civium, praeterèa armorum atque equorum maior copia nobis quam illis est. Sed alia fuere, quae illos magnos fecere, quae nobis nulla sunt: domi industria, foris iustum imperium, animus in consulundo liber, neque delicto neque libidini 70 obnoxius. Pro his nos habemus luxuriam atque avaritiam, publice egestatem, privatim opulentiam. Laudamus divitias, sequimur inertiam. Inter bonos et malos discrimen nullum, omnia virtutis praemia ambitio possidet. Neque mirum: ubi vos separatim 75 sibi quisque consilium capitis, ubi domi voluptatibus, hic pecuniae aut gratiae servitis, eo fit ut impetus fiat in vacuam rem publicam.

‘Sed ego haec omitto. Coniuravere nobilissimi cives patriam incendere, Gallorum gentem infestis- 80

~~set a parte~~

~~recte~~
~~notum~~

~~notum~~

simam nomini Romano ad bellum arcessunt; dux
 hostium cum exercitu ^{clauso} supra caput est: vos cuncta-
 mini etiam nunc et dubitatis quid intra moenia
 deprensus hostibus faciatis? Misereamini censeo
 85 (deliquere homines adolescentuli per ambitionem)
 atque etiam armatos dimittatis: ne ista vobis
 mansuetudo et misericordia, si illi arma ceperint,
 in miseriam convortat. Scilicet res ipsa aspera est,
 sed vos non timetis eam. Immo vero maxime.
 90 Sed inertia et mollitia animi alius alium expect-
 antes cunctamini, videlicet dis immortalibus confisi,
 qui hanc rem publicam saepe in maximis periculis
 servavere. Non votis neque suppliciis muliebribus
 auxilia deorum parantur: vigilando, agundo, bene
 95 consulundo, prospera omnia cedunt. Ubi socordiae
 te atque ignaviae tradideris, nequiquam deos im-
 plores: irati infestique sunt. Apud maiores nostros
 A. Manlius Torquatus bello Gallico filium suum,
 quod is contra imperium in hostem pugnaverat,
 100 necari iussit, atque ille, egregius adolescens, im-
 moderatae fortitudinis morte poenas dedit: vos de
 crudelissimis parricidis quid statuatis cunctamini?
 Videlicet cetera vita eorum huic sceleri obstat.
 Verum parcite dignitati Lentuli, si ipse pudicitiae,
 105 si famae suae, si dis aut hominibus unquam ullis
 pepercit. Ignoscite Cethegi adolescentiae, nisi iterum
 patriae bellum fecit. Nam quid ego de Gabinio,
 Statilio, Caepario loquar? Quibus si quicquam
 unquam pensi fuisset, non ea consilia de re publica

habuissent. Postremo, patres conscripti, si meher- 110
 cule peccato locus esset, facile paterer vos ipsa re
 corrigi, quoniam verba contemnitis. Sed undique
 circumventi sumus. Catilina cum exercitu faucibus
 urget; alii intra moenia atque in sinu urbis sunt
 hostes; neque parari neque consuli quicquam potest 115
 occulte: quo magis properandum est.

‘Qua re ego ita censeo, cum nefario consilio scelera-
 torum civium res publica in maxima pericula venerit,
 eique indicio T. Volturcii et legatorum Allobrogum
 convicti confessique sint caedem, incendia aliaque se 120
 foeda atque crudelia facinora in cives patriamque
 paravisse, de confessis, sicut de manifestis rerum
 capitalium, more maiorum supplicium sumundum.’

Postquam Cato adsedit, consulares omnes itemque
 senatus magna pars sententiam eius laudant, vir- 125
 tutem animi ad caelum ferunt, alii alios increpantes
 timidos vocant. Cato clarus atque magnus habetur:
 senati decretum fit sicuti ille censuerat.

CATO'S CHARACTER COMPARED WITH CAESAR'S

[SALLUST'S comparison of the two men is noteworthy
 for the almost grudging admiration it reveals of
 Cato's integrity and principle, and for its implied
 admission that Caesar, his own political hero, lacked
 these qualities.]

Sed mihi multa legenti, multa audienti quae
 populus Romanus domi militiae mari atque terra

praeclara facinora fecit, forte libuit attendere quae
res maxime tanta negotia sustinuisset. Sciebam
5 saepe numero parva manu cum magnis legionibus
hostium contendisse; cognoveram parvis copiis bella
gesta cum opulentis regibus, ad hoc saepe fortunae
violentiam toleravisse, facundia Graecos, gloria belli
Gallos ante Romanos fuisse. Ac mihi multa agitant
10 constabat paucorum civium egregiam virtutem
cuncta patravisse, eoque factum uti divitias pauper-
tas, multitudinem paucitas superaret. Sed postquam
luxu atque desidia civitas corrupta est, rursus res
publica magnitudine sua imperatorum atque magi-
15 stratum vitia sustentabat, ac sicuti effeta parente,
multis tempestatibus haud sane quisquam Romae
virtute magnus fuit. Sed memoria mea ingenti
virtute, divorsis moribus fuere viri duo, M. Cato et
C. Caesar. Quos quoniam res obtulerat, silentio
20 praeterire non fuit consilium quin utriusque naturam
et mores, quantum ingenio possum, aperirem. Igitur
eis genus, aetas, eloquentia prope aequalia fuere,
magnitudo animi par, item gloria, sed alia alii.
Caesar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur,
25 integritate vitae Cato. Ille mansuetudine et miseri-
cordia clarus factus, huic severitas dignitatem addi-
derat. Caesar dando, sublevando, ignoscundo, Cato
nihil largiundo gloriam adeptus est. In altero miseris
perfugium erat, in altero malis perniciēs. Illius
30 facilitas, huius constantia laudabatur. Postremo
Caesar in animum induxerat laborare, vigilare;

negotiis amicorum intentus sua negligere, nihil
denegare quod dono dignum .esset; sibi magnum
imperium, exercitum, bellum novum exoptabat,
ubi virtus enitescere posset. At Catoni studium 35
modestiae, decoris, sed maxime severitatis erat; non
divitiis cum divite neque factione cum factioso, sed
cum strenuo virtute, cum modesto pudore, cum
innocente abstinentia certabat; esse quam videri
bonus malebat: ita, quo minus petebat gloriam, eo 40
magis illum adsequebatur.

LIVY
(TITUS LIVIUS)
Historian, 59 B.C.-A.D. 17

THE STORY OF SOPHONISBA
(*Book XXX, from Chs. xii-xv*)

[THE pages that follow contain Livy's account of an episode that occurred in 203 B.C., when the long second Punic War was drawing to its close as the result of the invasion of Africa by the brilliant young soldier Scipio, a move that ultimately forced Hannibal's withdrawal from Italy.

Aided by his friend Laelius, and by a native prince, Masinissa, Scipio has gained great successes, and the narrative opens with Masinissa's bringing to the palace of Syphax (a rival prince who has lately taken the side of Carthage) news of that prince's capture. Masinissa is received by Sophonisba, his captive's lovely Carthaginian queen, who sets herself at once to charm the susceptible conqueror, with such success that he marries her within the day, hoping thereby to preclude any decision adverse to Sophonisba which the Roman commander might otherwise be inclined to take.

The scene shifts to Scipio's camp. The Roman

general, who emerges from Livy's attempt to portray him as superhuman as a figure somewhat inhuman, receives his prisoner Syphax and reproaches him for his desertion from the Roman cause. Syphax blames Sophonisba for this step, and, pretending an indifference that he does not feel, declares himself gratified that his enemy Masinissa has now wedded her and will henceforth be the victim of her ruinous influence.

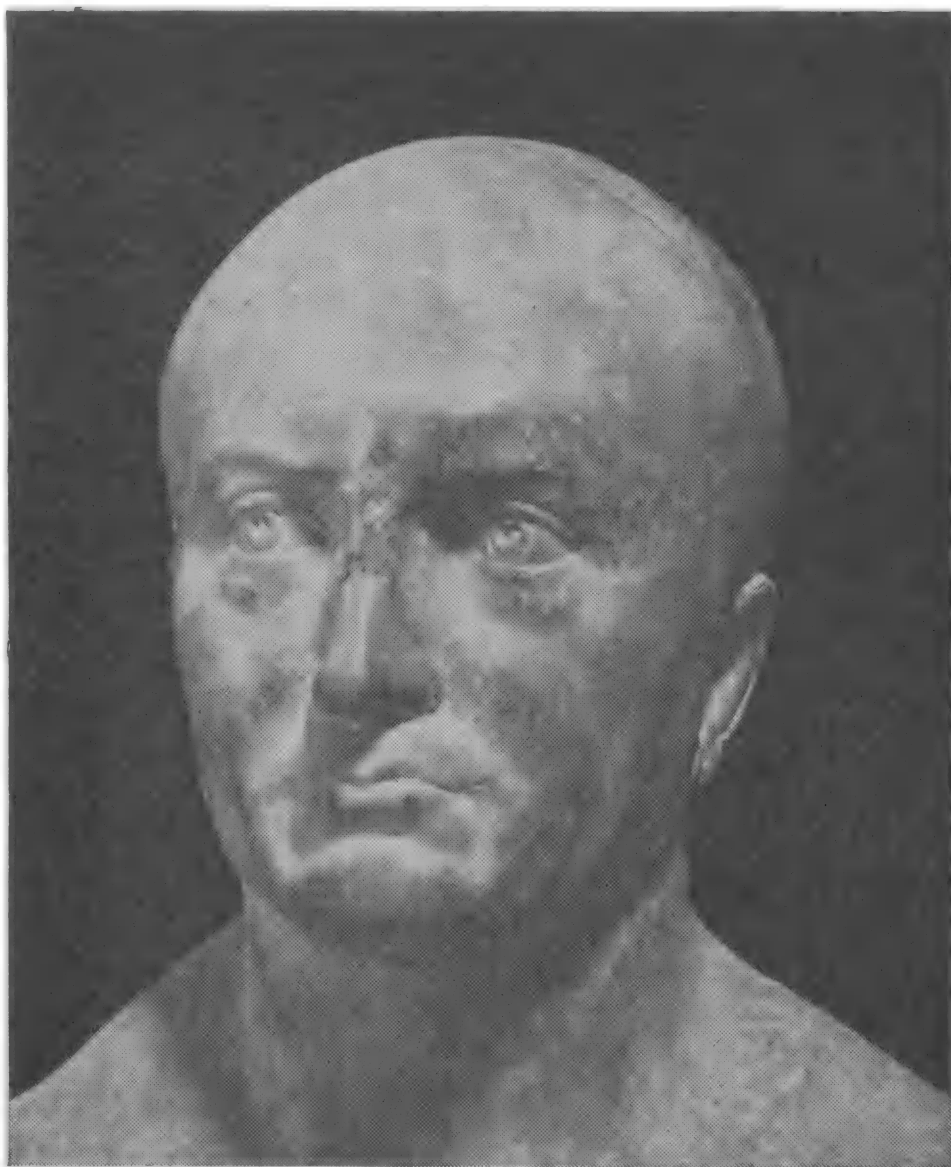
Presently Laelius and Masinissa arrive. The latter is welcomed publicly by Scipio, but is later taken aside to learn his displeasure at the hasty marriage, and to be told that the fate of his bride is for the Roman senate to determine.

Masinissa withdraws, and after agonies of indecision and remorse resolves to deliver Sophonisba from the clutches of Rome by sending her poison, whereupon the queen drains the draught with fortitude.

This tale, with its strongly contrasted male characters, the hot-blooded African rivals and the two Romans, in whom humanity is subservient to statecraft, and with its central figure a woman of such beauty, pride and intrepidity, is ready-made drama which has naturally appealed to playwrights in other literatures.

Livy himself was inspired by the tale to put some of his finest rhetoric into the mouths of the four chief characters.]

Intranti vestibulum in ipso limine Sophoniba, uxor Syphacis, filia Hasdrubalis Poeni, occurrit; et cum in medio agmine armatorum Masinissam insignem cum armis tum cetero habitu conspexisset, 5 regem esse, id quod erat, rata, genibus advoluta eius: 'omnia quidem ut posses' inquit 'in nobis, di dederunt virtusque et felicitas tua: sed si captivae apud dominum vitae necisque suae vocem supplicem mittere licet, si genua, si victricem attingere dex- 10 tram, precor quaesoque per maiestatem regiam, in qua paulo ante nos quoque fuimus, per gentis Numidarum nomen, quod tibi cum Syphace commune fuit, per huiusce regiae deos, qui te melioribus ominibus accipiant quam Syphacem hinc miserunt, 15 hanc veniam supplici des, ut ipse quodcumque fert animus de captiva statuas neque me in cuiusquam Romani superbum et crudele arbitrium venire sinas. Si nihil aliud quam Syphacis uxor fuisset, tamen Numidae atque in eadem mecum Africa geniti quam 20 alienigenae et externi fidem experiri mallet: quid Carthaginensi ab Romano, quid filiae Hasdrubalis timendum sit, vides. Si nulla re alia potes, morte me ut vindices ab Romanorum arbitrio oro obtestorque.' Forma erat insignis et florentissima aetas: 25 itaque cum, modo genua modo dextram amplectens, in id, ne cui Romano traderetur, fidem exposceret, propiusque blanditias oratio esset quam preces, non in misericordiam modo prolapsus est animus victoris, sed, ut est genus Numidarum in venerem praeceps,



Bust

thought to be that of Scipio Africanus Major

amore captivae victor captus. Data dextra in id 30
quod petebatur obligandae fidei, in regiam concedit.
Insistit deinde reputare secum ipse, quem ad modum
promissi fidem praestaret. Quod cum expedire non
posset, ab amore temerarium atque impudens mutu-
atur consilium: nuptias in eum ipsum diem parari 35

repente iubet, ne quid relinqueret integri aut Laelio aut ipsi Scipioni consulendi velut in captivam, quae Masinissae iam nupta foret. Factis nuptiis supervenit Laelius et adeo non dissimulavit improbare se
40 factum, ut primo etiam cum Syphace et ceteris captivis detractam eam lecto geniali mittere ad Scipionem conatus sit. Victus deinde precibus Masinissae orantis, ut arbitrium, utrius regum duorum fortunae accessio Sophoniba esset, ad Scipionem reiceret,
45 misso Syphace et captivis, ceteras urbes Numidiae, quae praesidiis regiis tenebantur, adiuvante Masinissa recipit.

.

Rex in praetorium ad Scipionem est perductus. Movit et Scipionem cum fortuna pristina viri praesenti fortunae collata, tum recordatio hospitii dextraeque datae et foederis publice ac privatim iuncti.
50 Eadem haec et Syphaci animum dederunt in adloquendo victorem. Nam cum Scipio quid sibi voluisset quaereret, qui non societatem solum abnuisset
55 Romanam, sed ultro bellum intulisset, tum ille peccasse quidem sese atque insanisse fatebatur, sed non tum demum cum arma adversus populum Romanum cepisset; exitum sui furoris eum fuisse, non principium: tum se insanisse, tum hospitia
60 privata et publica foedera omnia ex animo eiecisse, cum Carthaginiensem matronam domum acceperit. Illis nuptialibus facibus regiam conflagrasse suam,

illam furiam pestemque omnibus delenimentis animum suum avertisse atque alienasse, nec conquiesse, donec ipsa manibus suis nefaria sibi arma adversus 65 hospitem atque amicum induerit. Perdito tamen atque adflicto sibi hoc in miseriis solatii esse, quod in omnium hominum inimicissimi sibi domum ac penates eandem pestem ac furiam transisse videat. Neque prudentiorem neque constantiorem Masinissam 70 quam Syphacem esse, etiam iuventa incautiorem: certe stultius illum atque intemperantius eam quam se duxisse.

Haec non hostili modo odio sed amoris etiam stimulis amatam apud aemulum cernens cum dixisset, 75 non mediocri cura Scipionis animum pepulit. Et fidem criminibus raptae prope inter arma nuptiae neque consulto neque exspectato Laelio faciebant, tamque praeceps festinatio, ut quo die captam hostem vidisset, eodem matrimonio iunctam acciperet 80 et ad penates hostis sui nuptiale sacrum conficeret. Et eo foediora haec videbantur Scipioni, quod ipsum in Hispania iuvenem nullius forma pepulerat captivae. Haec secum volutanti Laelius et Masinissa supervenerunt; quos cum pariter ambo 85 et benigno vultu excepisset et egregiis laudibus frequenti praetorio celebrasset, abductum in secretum Masinissam sic adloquitur: ' Aliqua te existimo, Masinissa, intuentem in me bona et principio in Hispania ad iungendam mecum amicitiam venisse, 90 et postea in Africa te ipsum spesque omnes tuas

in fidem meam commisisse. Atqui nulla earum
 virtus est propter quas tibi appetendus visus sim,
 qua ego aequae ac temperantiae et continentiae libi-
 95 dinum gloriatus fuerim. Hanc te quoque ad ceteras
 tuas eximias virtutes, Masinissa, adiecisse velim.
 Non est, non—mihi crede—tantum ab hostibus



SILVER COIN

ISSUED IN SPAIN BY CARTHAGINIAN CONQUERORS

(The device below the elephant is the Phoenician letter *aleph*)

armatis aetatis nostrae periculum, quantum ab cir-
 cumfusiis undique voluptatibus. Qui eas temperantia
 100 sua frenavit ac domuit, multo maius decus maiorem-
 que victoriam sibi peperit quam nos Syphace victo
 habemus. Quae me absente strenue ac fortiter
 fecisti, libenter et commemoravi et memini: cetera
 te ipsum reputare tecum quam me dicente erube-
 105 scere malo. Syphax populi Romani auspiciis victus
 captusque est. Itaque ipse, coniunx, regnum, ager
 et oppida, homines qui incolunt, quidquid denique
 Syphacis fuit, praeda populi Romani est; et regem
 coniugemque eius etiamsi non civis Carthaginensis
 110 esset, etiamsi non patrem eius imperatorem hostiam
 videremus, Romam oporteret mitti, ac senatus
 populiue Romani de ea iudicium atque arbitrium

esse, quae regem socium nobis alienasse atque in arma egisse praecipitem dicatur. Vince animum: cave deformes multa bona uno vitio, et tot meritorum gratiam maiore culpa, quam causa culpaest, corrumpas.' 115



BUST OF THE EMPEROR TIBERIUS

Masinissae haec audienti non rubor solum suffusus sed lacrimae etiam obortae; et cum se quidem in potestate futurum imperatoris dixisset, orassetque 120 eum ut, quantum res sineret, fidei suae temere obstrictae consuleret—promisisse enim se in nullius potestatem eam traditurum—ex praetorio in tabernaculum suum confusus concedit. Ibi arbitris remotis cum crebro suspiritu et gemitu, quod facile 125

ab circumstantibus tabernaculum exaudiri posset, aliquantum temporis consumpsisset, ingenti ad postremum edito gemitu fidum e servis vocat, sub cuius custodia regio more ad incerta fortunae
130 venenum erat, et mixtum in poculo ferre ad Sophonibam iubet, ac simul nuntiare Masinissam libenter primam ei fidem praestaturum fuisse, quam vir uxori debuerit: quoniam eius arbitrium qui possint adimant, secundam fidem praestare, ne viva in
135 potestatem Romanorum veniat: memor patris imperatoris patriaeque et duorum regum, quibus nupta fuisset, sibi ipsa consuleret. Hunc nuntium ac simul venenum ferens minister cum ad Sophonibam venisset, ' accipio ' inquit ' nuptiale munus, neque
140 ingratum, si nihil maius vir uxori praestare potuit: hoc tamen nuntia, melius me morituram fuisse, si non in funere meo nupsissem.' Non locuta est ferocius quam acceptum poculum nullo trepidationis signo dato impavide hausit.

TACITUS
(PUBLIUS CORNELIUS TACITUS)
Historian, A.D. 52-118

MUTINY AMONGST
THE PANNONIAN LEGIONS (A.D. 14)
(*Annales, Liber I, cap. 16-28 with omissions*)

[AFTER publishing an account of the various tribes of the Germans (the *Germania*) and a monograph in praise of his father-in-law Agricola, who had been a successful general and governor in Britain, Tacitus produced his two great works, the *Histories* which deal with the period of A.D. 69-96 and the *Annals* which cover the period A.D. 14-69. Both these great works survive only in portions and the present extract is taken from the first book of the *Annals* in which Tacitus describes in chapters 5-15 the last illness and death of Augustus (A.D. 14), the succession of Tiberius, Augustus' will, funeral, the honours conferred upon him and his family, and the institution of games in his honour. The following chapters take the reader from the Roman capital to Pannonia where a serious revolt takes place. It is this revolt that forms the story of the extract chosen for this book.

As a historian Tacitus is not free from bias or prejudice but he shows a keen insight into the motives of the characters that enter his pages, and displays a great power of vivid presentation. The style of Tacitus is in strong contrast with the ample periods and flowing and sonorous rhythm of Cicero, for his language is incisive, highly-polished, and epigrammatic. Yet at their best, his pages glow with the colourful excitement of great men and great events.]

Hic rerum urbanarum status erat, cum Pannonicas legiones seditio incessit, nullis novis causis, nisi quod mutatus princeps licentiam turbarum et ex civili bello spem praemiorum ostendebat. ^{colloquitur} Castris
 5 aestivis tres simul legiones habebantur, praesidente Iunio Blaeso, qui fine Augusti et initiis Tiberii auditis ob iustitium aut gaudium intermiserat solita munia. Eo principio lascivire miles, discordare, pessimi cuiusque sermonibus praebere aures, denique
 10 luxum et otium cupere, disciplinam et laborem aspernari. Erat in castris Percennius quidam, dux olim theatralium operarum, dein gregarius miles, procax lingua et miscere coetus histrionali studio doctus.

15 Postremo promptis iam et aliis seditionis ministris velut contionabundus interrogabat, cur paucis centurionibus, paucioribus tribunis in modum servorum oboedirent. Quando ausuros exposcere remedia,

nisi novum et nutantem adhuc principem precibus
vel armis adirent?

20

(Percennius emphasises the soldiers' complaints: poor pay, unsatisfactory grants of land by way of pension, and poor conditions of service and leave. Then he gives their demands.)

Nec aliud levamentum quam si certis sub legibus militia iniretur, ut singulos denarios mererent, sextus decumus stipendii annus finem adferret, ne ultra sub vexillis tenerentur, set isdem in castris praemium pecunia solveretur. An praetorias cohortes, quae 25 binos denarios acceperint, quae post sedecim annos penatibus suis reddantur, plus periculorum suscipere? Non obtrectari a se urbanas excubias: sibi tamen apud horridas gentes e contuberniis hostem aspici.

Adstrepebat vulgus, diversis incitamentis, hi 30 verberum notas, illi canitiem, plurimi detrita tegmina et nudum corpus exprobrantes. Postremo eo furoris venere, ut tres legiones miscere in unam agitaverint. Depulsi aemulatione, quia suae quisque legioni eum honorem quaerebant, alio vertunt 35 atque una tres aquilas et signa cohortium locant; simul congerunt caespites, exstruunt tribunal, quo magis conspicua sedes foret. Properantibus Blaesus advenit, increpabatque ac retinebat singulos, clamitans 'mea potius caede imbuite manus: levio- 40 re flagitio legatum interficietis quam ab imperatore desciscitis. Aut incolumis fidem legionum retinebo, aut iugulatus paenitentiam adcelerabo.'

Aggerabatur nihilo minus caespes iamque pectori
 45 usque adcreverat, cum tandem pervicacia victi
 inceptum omisere. Blaesus multa dicendi arte
 non per seditionem et turbas desideria militum ad
 Caesarem ferenda ait, neque veteres ab imperatori-
 bus priscis neque ipsos a divo Augusto tam nova
 50 petivisse; et parum in tempore incipientes principis
 curas onerari. Si tamen tenderent in pace temptare
 quae ne civilium quidem bellorum victores expostu-
 laverint, cur contra morem obsequii, contra fas
 disciplinae vim meditentur? Decernerent legatos
 55 seque coram mandata darent. Adclamavere ut
 filius Blaesi tribunus legatione ea fungeretur peteret-
 que militibus missionem ab sedecim annis: cetera
 mandatueros, ubi prima provenissent. Profecto iuvene
 modicum otium: sed superbire miles, quod filius
 60 legati orator publicae causae satis ostenderet neces-
 sitate expressa quae per modestiam non obtinuis-
 sent.

(An omitted chapter tells how several companies have been sent out of camp before the mutiny to build roads and repair bridges and how, on hearing of the revolt, they rise against their officers, and begin to plunder the nearby villages. The next section describes the results of the return to camp of these troops.)

Horum adventu redintegratur seditio, et vagi cir-
 cumiecta populabantur. Blaesus paucos, maxime
 65 praeda onustos, ad terrorem ceterorum adfici ver-
 beribus, claudi carcere iubet; nam etiam tum

legato a centurionibus et optimo quoque manipularium parebatur. Illi obniti trahentibus, pressare circumstantium genua, ciere modo nomina singulorum, modo centuriam quisque cuius erat, 70 cohortem, legionem, eadem omnibus inminere clamitantes. Simul probra in legatum cumulant, caelum ac deos obtestantur, nihil reliqui faciunt quo minus invidiam misericordiam metum et iras permoverent. Adcurritur ab universis, et carcere effracto solvunt 75 vincula desertoresque ac rerum capitalium damnatos sibi iam miscent.

Flagrantior inde vis, plures seditioni duces et Vibulenus quidam gregarius miles, ante tribunal Blaesi adlevatus circumstantium umeris, apud turbatos et quid pararet intentos 'vos quidem' inquit 'his innocentibus et miserrimis lucem et spiritum reddidistis: sed quis fratri meo vitam, quis fratrem mihi reddit? Quem missum ad vos a Germanico exercitu de communibus commodis nocte proxima 85 iugulavit per gladiatores suos, quos in exitium militum habet atque armat. Responde, Blaese, ubi cadaver abieceris: ne hostes quidem sepultura invident. Cum osculis, cum lacrimis dolorem meum implevero, me quoque trucidari iube, dum inter- 90 fectos nullum ob scelus, sed quia utilitati legionum consulebamus, hi sepeliant.'

Incendebat haec fletu et pectus atque os manibus verberans. Mox disiectis quorum per umeros sustinebatur, praeceps et singulorum pedibus advolutus 95

tantum consternationis invidiaeque concivit, ut
pars militum gladiatores qui e servitio Blaesi
erant, pars ceteram eiusdem familiam vincirent,
alii ad quaerendum corpus effunderentur. Ac ni
100 propere neque corpus ullum reperiri, et servos
adhibitis cruciatibus abnuere caedem, neque illi
fuisse umquam fratrem pernotuisset, haud multum
ab exitio legati aberant. Tribunos tamen ac prae-
fectum castrorum extrudere, sarcinae fugientium
105 direptae, et centurio Lucilius interficitur, cui mili-
taribus facetiis vocabulum 'cedo alteram' indi-
derant, quia fracta vite in tergo militis alteram clara
voce ac rursus aliam poscebat. Ceteros latebrae
texere, uno retento Clementi Iulio, qui perferendis
110 militum mandatis habebatur idoneus ob promptum
ingenium. Quin ipsae inter se legiones octava et
quinta decuma ferrum parabant, dum centurionem
cognomento Sirpicum illa morti deposcit, quinta-
decumani tuentur, ni miles nonanus preces et ad-
115 versum aspernantis minas interiecisset.

Haec audita quamquam abstrusum et tristis-
sima quaeque maxime occultantem Tiberium per-
pulere ut Drusum filium cum primoribus civitatis
duabusque praetoriis cohortibus mitteret, nullis
120 satis certis mandatis, ex re consulturum. Et cohortes
delecto milite supra solitum firmatae.

Postquam vallum introiit, portas stationibus
firmant, globos armatorum certis castrorum locis
opperiri iubent: ceteri tribunal ingenti agmine cir-

cumveniunt. Stabat Drusus silentium manu poscens. 125
 Illi quotiens oculos ad multitudinem rettulerant,
 vocibus truculentis strepere, rursum viso Caesare
 trepidare; murmur incertum, atrox clamor et re-
 pente quies; diversis animorum motibus pavebant
 terrebantque. Tandem interrupto tumultu litteras 130
 patris recitat, in quis perscriptum erat, praecipuam
 ipsi fortissimarum legionum curam, quibuscum plu-
 rima bella toleravisset; ubi primum a luctu requiescet
 animus, acturum apud patres de postulatis eorum;
 misisse interim filium, ut sine cunctatione concederet 135
 quae statim tribui possent; cetera senatui servanda,
 quem neque gratiae neque severitatis expertem
 haberi par esset.

Responsum est a contione, mandata Clementi
 centurioni quae perferret. Is orditur de missione 140
 a sedecim annis, de praemiis finitae militiae, ut
 denarius diurnum stipendium foret, ne veterani sub
 vexillo haberentur. Ad ea Drusus cum arbitrium
 senatus et patris obtenderet, clamore turbatur. Cur
 venisset neque augendis militum stipendiis neque 145
 adlevandis laboribus, denique nulla bene faciendi
 licentia? At hercule verbera et necem cunctis per-
 mitti. Tiberium olim nomine Augusti desideria
 legionum frustrari solitum: easdem artes Drusum
 rettulisse. Numquamne ad se nisi filios familiarum 150
 venturos? Novum id plane quod imperator sola
 militis commoda ad senatum reiciat. Eundem ergo
 senatum consulendum, quotiens supplicia aut proelia

indicantur: an praemia sub dominis, poenas sine
 155 arbitro esse?

(A chapter omitted describes the continued unrest of the soldiers, who, particularly incensed against an officer, Cneius Lentulus, as responsible for strengthening Drusus' opposition to them, are preparing to lynch him, when he is rescued by the timely intervention of Drusus' party.)

Noctem minacem et in scelus erupturam fors
 lenivit: nam luna claro repente caelo visa langue-
 scere. Id miles rationis ignarus omen praesentium
 accepit, suis laboribus defectionem sideris adsimu-
 160 lans, prospereque cessura qua pergerent, si fulgor
 et claritudo deae redderetur. Igitur aeris sono,
 tubarum cornuumque concentu strepere; prout
 splendidior obscuriorve, laetari aut maerere; et
 postquam ortae nubes offecere visui creditumque
 165 conditam tenebris, ut sunt mobiles ad superstitionem
 percussae semel mentes, sibi aeternum laborem
 portendi, sua facinora aversari deos lamentantur.
 Utendum inclinatione ea Caesar et quae casus
 obtulerat in sapientiam vertenda ratus circumiri
 170 tentoria iubet; accitur centurio Clemens et si alii
 bonis artibus grati in vulgus. Hi vigiliis, stationi-
 bus, custodiis portarum se inserunt, spem offerunt,
 metum intendunt. 'Quousque filium imperatoris
 obsidebimus? Quis certaminum finis? Percennione
 175 et Vibuleno sacramentum dicturi sumus? Percennius
 et Vibulenus stipendia militibus, agros emeritis

largientur? Denique pro Neronibus et Drusis imperium populi Romani capessent? Quin potius, ut novissimi in culpam, ita primi ad paenitentiam sumus? Tarda sunt quae in commune expostulan- 180
tur: privatam gratiam statim mereare, statim recipias.' Commotis per haec mentibus et inter se suspectis, tironem a veterano, legionem a legione dissociant. Tum redire paulatim amor obsequii: omittunt portas, signa unum in locum principio 185
seditionis congregata suas in sedes referunt.

6-11-11, (3 civil
sequences
as a hobby)

PLINY

(CAIUS PLINIUS CAECILIUS SECUNDUS)

~~Lawyer~~, Administrator, Writer of Letters,

Barrister

c. A.D. 61-114

THREE LETTERS

(III, 16; VI, 25, 31)

[In reading the following letters you cannot fail to remark the extreme shadowiness of the correspondent addressed. The fact is plain that the epistolary form is incidental to Pliny's main purpose, which appears to be the writing of elegant essays of an autobiographical and reminiscent colour.

The first selection, addressed to a friend named Nepos, consists of a number of anecdotes of a certain Arria, a Roman matron who, in the reign of Claudius, became celebrated as an example of nobility and fortitude.

The second, rather more of a real letter, contains Pliny's promise to aid in the enquiries being made for a missing traveller. The disappearance recalls to Pliny a similar incident involving a beneficiary of his own, an unsolved mystery upon which Pliny is inclined to put a sinister construction.

In the third letter Pliny records with pardonable pride his experiences as guest and counsellor of the Emperor Trajan. He records three law cases in which, with others, he helped Trajan as assessor, and concludes with an account of his entertainment at the palace, and of the harbour, a vast engineering enterprise, which is in course of construction within sight of the imperial villa.]

I

Adnotasse videor facta dictaque virorum feminarumque illustrium alia clariora, alia maiora. Confirmata est opinio mea hesterno Fanniae sermone. Neptis haec Arriae illius, quae marito et solacium mortis et exemplum fuit. Multa referebat aviae 5 suae non minora hoc, sed obscuriora; quae tibi existimo tam mirabilia legenti fore, quam mihi audienti fuerunt.

Aegrotabat Caecina Paetus, maritus eius, aegrotabat et filius, uterque mortifere, ut videbatur. 10 Filius decessit eximia pulchritudine, pari verecundia et parentibus non minus ob id carus, quam quod filius erat. Huic illa ita funus paravit, ita duxit exsequias, ut ignoraret maritus; quin immo, quotiens cubiculum eius intraret, vivere filium atque etiam 15 commodiorem esse simulabat ac persaepe interroganti quid ageret puer, respondebat 'Bene quievit, libenter cibum sumpsit.' Deinde, cum diu cohibitae lacrimae vincerent prorumperentque, egrediebatur;

Α. V. 18.

20 tum se dolori dabat; satiata siccis oculis composito
vultu redibat, tamquam orbitatem foris reliquisset.
Praeclarum quidem illud eiusdem, ferrum stringere,
perfodere pectus, extrahere pugionem, porrigere
marito, addere vocem immortalem ac p̄aene divi-
25 nam: 'Paete, non dolet.' Sed tamen ista facienti
dicentique gloria et aeternitas ante oculos erant; quo
maius est sine praemio aeternitatis, sine praemio
gloriae abdere lacrimas, operire luctum, amissoque
filio matrem adhuc agere.

30 Scribonianus arma in Illyrico contra Claudium
moverat; fuerat Paetus in partibus, occiso Scribo-
niano Romam trahebatur. Erat ascensurus navem.
Arria milites orabat ut simul imponeretur. 'Nempe
enim,' inquit, 'daturi estis consulari viro servulos
35 aliquos, quorum e manu cibum capiat, a quibus
vestiatur, a quibus calcietur: omnia sola praestabo.'
Non impetravit; conduxit piscatoriam naviculam
ingensque navigium minimo secuta est. Eadem
apud Claudium uxori Scriboniani, cum illa profi-
40 teretur indicium, 'Ego,' inquit, 'te audiam, cuius
in gremio Scribonianus occisus est, et vivis?' Ex
quo manifestum est ei consilium pulcherrimae mortis
non subitum fuisse.

Quin etiam cum Thrasea, gener eius, deprecaretur
45 ne mori pergeret, interque alia dixisset: 'Vis ergo
filiam tuam, si mihi pereundum fuerit, mori mecum?'
respondit: 'Si tam diu tantaque concordia vixerit
tecum quam ego cum Paeto, volo. Auxerat hoc

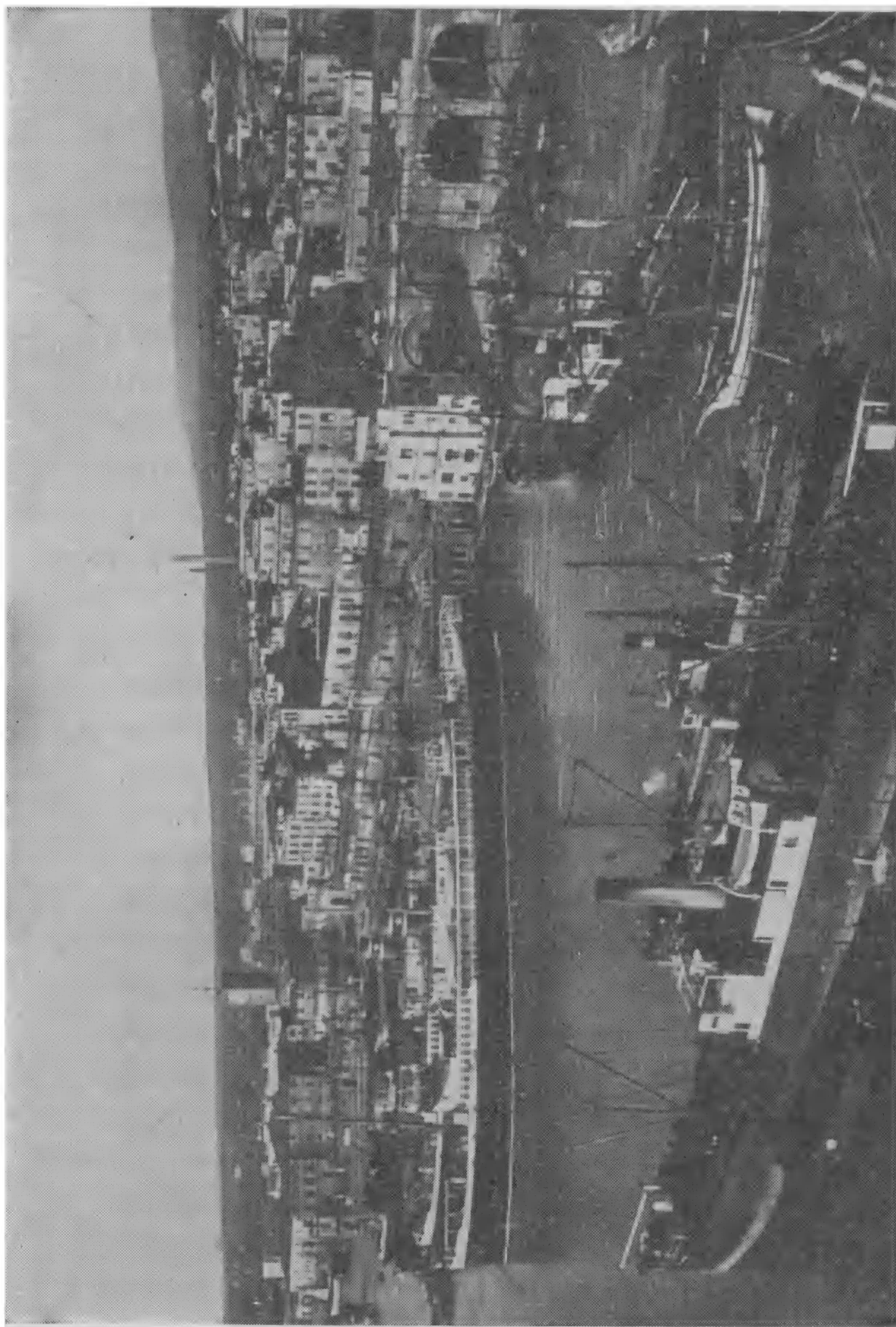
responso curam suorum, attentius custodiebatur; sensit et ' Nihil agitis ' inquit; ' potestis enim efficere 50 ut male moriar; ne moriar non potestis.' Dum haec dicit, exsiluit cathedra adversoque parieti caput ingenti impetu impegit et corruit. Focilata ' Dixeram,' inquit, ' vobis inventuram me quamlibet duram ad mortem viam, si vos facilem negassetis.' 55

Videnturne haec tibi maiora illo ' Paete, non dolet,' ad quod per haec perventum est, cum interim illud quidem ingens fama, haec nulla circumfert? Unde colligitur, quod initio dixi, alia esse clariora, alia maiora. Vale. 60

II

Scribis Robustum, splendidum equitem Romanum, cum Attilio Scauro, amico meo, Ocriculum usque commune iter peregissee, deinde nusquam comparuisse; petis ut Scaurus veniat nosque, si potest, in aliqua inquisitionis vestigia inducat. 65 Veniet; vereor ne frustra. Suspikor enim tale nescio quid Robusto accidisse quale aliquando Metilio Crispo, municipi meo. Huic ego ordinem impetra-veram, atque etiam proficiscenti quadraginta milia nummum ad instruendum se ornandumque dona- 70 veram nec postea aut epistulas eius aut aliquem de exitu nuntium accepi. Interceptusne sit a suis an cum suis dubium; certe non ipse, non quisquam ex servis eius apparuit.

Utinam ne in Robusto idem experiamur. Tamen 75



E.N.A.

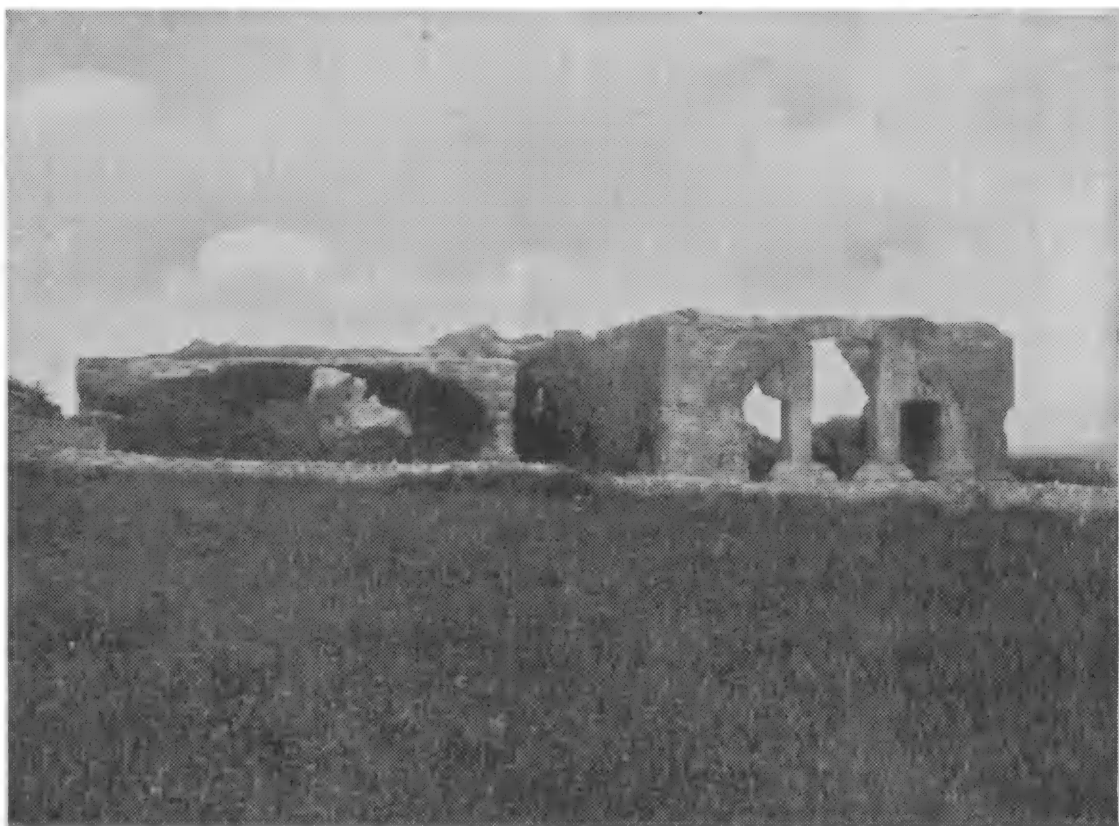
CIVITA VECCHIA,
the site of the ancient Centum Cellae

arcessamus Scaurum; demus hoc tuis, demus optimi adulescentis honestissimis precibus, qui pietate mira, mira etiam sagacitate patrem quaerit. Di faveant, ut sic inveniat ipsum, quemadmodum iam cum quo fuisset invenit. Vale. 80

III

Evocatus in consilium a Caesare nostro ad Centum Cellas (hoc loco nomen) maximam cepi voluptatem. Quid enim iucundius quam principis iustitiam, gravitatem, comitatem in secessu quoque, ubi maxime recluduntur, inspicere? Fuerunt variae cognitiones, 85 et quae virtutes iudicis per plures species experirentur. Dixit causam Claudius Ariston, princeps Ephesiorum, homo munificus et innoxie popularis. Inde invidia et ab dissimillimis delator immissus. Itaque absolutus vindicatusque est. 90

Sequenti die audita est Gallitta adulterii rea. Nupta haec tribuno militum honores petituro et suam et mariti dignitatem centurionis amore maculaverat. Maritus legato consulari, ille Caesari scripserat. Caesar excussis probationibus centurionem 95 exauctoravit atque etiam relegavit. Supererat crimini, quod nisi duorum esse non poterat, reliqua pars ultionis; sed maritum non sine aliqua reprehensione patientiae amor uxoris retardabat, quam quidem etiam post delatum adulterium domi habu- 100 erat, quasi contentus aemulum removisse. Admonitus ut perageret accusationem, peregit invitus;

*Alinari*

CIVITA VECCHIA: RUINS OF THE BATHS OF TRAJAN

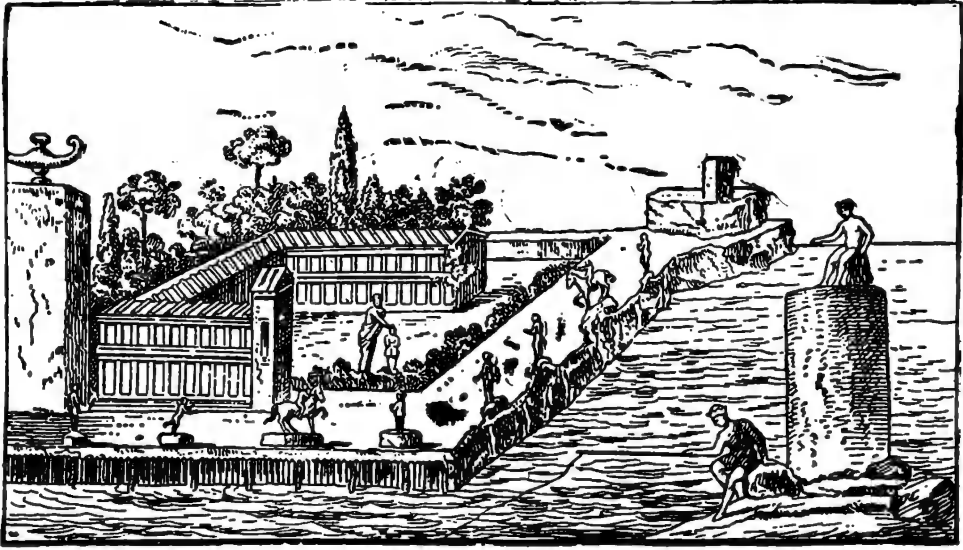
sed illam damnari etiam invito accusatore necesse
erat: damnata et Iuliae legis poenis relicta est.
105 Caesar et nomen centurionis et commemorationem
disciplinae militaris sententiae adiecit, ne omnes
eiusmodi causas revocare ad se videretur.

Tertio die inducta cognitio est multis sermonibus
et vario rumore iactata, Iulii Tironis codicilli, quos
110 ex parte veros esse constabat, ex parte falsi diceban-
tur. Substinuebantur crimini Sempronius Senecio,
eques Romanus, et Eurythmus, Caesaris libertus et
procurator. Heredes, cum Caesar esset in Dacia,
communiter epistula scripta petierant ut susciperet

cognitionem; suscepit. Reversus diem dederat et 115
cum ex heredibus quidam quasi reverentia Eurythmi
omitterent accusationem, pulcherrime dixerat 'Nec
ille Polyclitus nec ego Nero.' Indulserat tamen
petentibus dilationem cuius tempore exacto con-
siderat auditurus. A parte heredum intraverunt 120
duo omnino: postularunt ut aut omnes heredes
agere cogerentur, cum detulissent omnes, aut sibi
quoque desistere permetteretur.

Locutus est Caesar summa gravitate, summa
moderatione, cumque advocatus Senecionis et Eury- 125
thmi dixisset suspicionibus relinqui reos, nisi audi-
rentur: 'Non curo,' inquit, 'an isti suspicionibus
relinquantur; ego relinquer.' Dein conversus ad
nos: 'Ἐπιστήσατε quid facere debeamus: isti enim
queri volunt, quod sibi non licuerit accusare.' Tum 130
ex consilii sententia iussit denuntiari heredibus
omnibus aut agerent aut singuli approbarent causas
non agendi; alioqui se vel de calumnia pronuntia-
turum.

Vides quam honesti, quam severi dies; quos 135
iucundissimae remissiones sequebantur. Adhibeba-
mur cotidie cenae: erat modica, si principem cogi-
tares. Interdum ἀκροάματα audiebamus, interdum
iucundissimis sermonibus nox ducebatur. Summo
die abeuntibus nobis (tam diligens in Caesare huma- 140
nitas) xenia sunt missa. Sed mihi ut gravitas cog-
nitionum, consilii honor, suavitas simplicitasque
convictus, ita locus ipse periucundus fuit.



ROMAN SEA-SIDE VILLA
(' Villa pulcherrima . . . imminet litori ')

Villa pulcherrima cingitur viridissimis agris, im-
 145 minet litori; cuius in sinu fit cum maxime portus.
 Huius sinistrum brachium firmissimo opere munitum
 est; dextrum elaboratur. In ore portus insula
 adsurgit, quae illatum vento mare obiacens frangat
 tutumque ab utroque latere decursum navibus prae-
 150 stet; adsurgit autem arte visenda; ingentia saxa
 latissima navis provehit; contra, haec alia super
 alia deiecta ipso pondere manent ac sensim quodam
 velut aggere construuntur. Eminent iam et apparet
 saxeum dorsum impactosque fluctus in immensum
 155 elidit et tollit. Vastus illic fragor canumque circa
 mare. Saxis deinde pilae adicientur, quae proce-
 dente tempore enatam insulam imitentur. Habebit
 hic portus et iam habet nomen auctoris eritque vel
 maxime salutaris. Nam per longissimum spatium
 160 litus importuosum hoc receptaculo utetur. Vale.

SUETONIUS

(CAIUS SUETONIUS TRANQUILLUS)

Historian, c. A.D. 70-140

THE ASSASSINATION AND FUNERAL OF JULIUS CAESAR

*(De Vita Caesarum Liber I, Divus Iulius lxxxi, 4 to
the end, omitting lxxxiii)*

[THE 'Lives of the Caesars' by Suetonius, published A.D. 120, contain the biographies of Julius Caesar and the eleven emperors from Augustus to Domitian. As Suetonius is not a serious historian but one who seeks merely to amuse, his lives will be found to consist mainly of anecdotes which seem to be based on political and social gossip. In fact, we might compare Suetonius with a modern gossip writer who seeks solely to divert and entertain but, in doing so, narrates much that is interesting, especially in personal details that an ancient historian with a more serious purpose would tend to ignore.

Thus it is from Suetonius that we get many vivid pictures and facts about the twelve Caesars, details which have become a very part of our thoughts, part and parcel of our conception of the first hundred years of the Roman Empire.

The subject of this extract, the assassination and funeral of Julius Caesar, is well-known to English readers through Shakespeare's most popular historical play, *Julius Caesar*. Shakespeare, however, obtained his facts from a translation of Plutarch's¹ *Lives*; not from Suetonius, although it is possible that he had heard of his work.

Although Caesar's death has been foretold to him by many portents and signs, and he has been warned by a soothsayer to beware of danger up to and including the Ides of March (15th), Caesar decides to attend a meeting of the Senate on that date.

Suetonius' narrative follows on immediately.]

Ob haec simul et ob infirmam valetudinem diu cunctatus an se contineret et quae apud senatum proposuerat agere differret, tandem Decimo Bruto adhortante, ne frequentes ac iam dudum opperientes
 5 destitueret, quinta fere hora progressus est libellum-
 que insidiarum indicem ab obvio quodam porrectum, libellis ceteris, quos sinistra manu tenebat, quasi
 mox lecturus commiscuit. Dein pluribus hostiis caesis, cum litare non posset, introiit curiam spreta
 10 religione Spurinnamque irridens et ut falsum arguens, quod sine ulla sua noxa Idus Martiae adessent;

¹ Plutarch wrote in Greek about A.D. 100. North's translation (from a French translation) appeared in 1579. Philemon Holland made an English translation of Suetonius in 1606, too late for Shakespeare to have read it before he wrote *Julius Caesar* (probably produced in 1599).

quanquam is venisse quidem eas diceret, sed non praeterisse.

Assidentem conspirati specie officii circumsteterunt, ilicoque Cimber Tillius, qui primas partes 15 suscepit, quasi aliquid rogaturus propius accessit renuenteque et gestu in aliud tempus differenti ab utroque umero togam adprehendit; deinde clamantem: 'Ista quidem vis est!' alter e Cascis aversum vulnerat paulum infra iugulum. Caesar Cascae 20 brachium arreptum graphio traiecit conatusque prosilire alio vulnere tardatus est; utque animadvertit undique se strictis pugionibus peti, toga caput obvolvitur, simul sinistra manu sinum ad ima crura deduxit, quo honestius caderet etiam inferiore cor- 25 poris parte velata. Atque ita tribus et viginti plagis confossus est, uno modo ad primum ictum gemitu sine voce edito, etsi tradiderunt quidam Marco Bruto irruenti dixisse: καὶ σὺ τέκνον; Exanimis,



COIN,
bearing a head of Julius
Caesar and an inscription
meaning 'Caesar—Dictator
for Life'



COIN ISSUED BY MARCUS BRUTUS
(Note the cap of liberty, the two daggers, and the
inscription—EID(ibus) MAR(tiis)—all alluding to
the assassination of Julius Caesar)

diffugientibus cunctis, aliquamdiu iacuit, donec lecticae impositum, dependente brachio, tres servoli domum rettulerunt. Nec in tot vulneribus, ut

Antistus medicus existimabat, letale ullum repertum est, nisi quod secundo loco in pectore acceperat.

35 Fuerat animus coniuratis corpus occisi in Tiberim trahere, bona publicare, acta rescindere, sed metu Marci Antoni consulis et magistri equitum Lepidi destiterunt.

(The omitted section LXXXIII describes how in Caesar's will his heirs are named, and to each man of the people 300 sesterces are left, as well as the public use of his gardens near the Tiber.)

Funere indicto rogos extructus est in Martio
40 campo iuxta Iuliae tumulum et pro rostris aurata aedes ad simulacrum templi Veneris Genetricis collocata; intraque lectus eburneus auro ac purpura stratus, et ad caput tropaeum cum veste, in qua fuerat occisus. Praeferentibus munera, quia suf-
45 fecturus dies non videbatur, praeceptum, ut omisso ordine, quibus quisque vellet itineribus urbis, portaret in Campum. Inter ludos cantata sunt quaedam ad miserationem et invidiam caedis eius accommodata, ex Pacuvi Armorum iudicio:

50 'Men servasse, ut essent qui me perderent?'
et ex Electra Atili ad similem sententiam. Laudationis loco consul Antonius per praeconem pronuntiavit senatus consultum, quo omnia simul ei divina atque humana decreverat, item ius iurandum, quo
55 se cuncti pro salute unius astrinxerant; quibus perpauca a se verba addidit. Lectum pro rostris in

Forum magistratus et honoribus functi detulerunt. Quem cum pars in Capitolini Iovis cella cremare, pars in curia Pompei destinaret, repente duo quidam gladiis succincti ac bina iacula gestantes ardentibus 60 cereis succenderunt confestimque circumstantium turba virgulta arida et cum subselliis tribunalia, quicquid praeterea ad donum aderat, congeffit. Deinde tibicines et scaenici artifices vestem, quam ex triumphorum instrumento ad praesentem usum 65 induerant, detractam sibi atque discissam iniecere flammae et veteranorum militum legionarii arma sua, quibus exculti funus celebrabant; matronae etiam pleraeque ornamenta sua, quae gerebant, et liberorum bullas atque praetextas. 70

In summo publico luctu exterarum gentium multitudo circulatim suo quaeque more lamentata est praecipueque Iudaei, qui etiam noctibus continuis bustum frequentarunt.

Plebs statim a funere ad domum Bruti et Cassi cum 75 facibus tetendit atque aegre repulsa obvium sibi Helvium Cinna per errorem nominis, quasi Cornelius is esset, quem graviter pridie contionatum de Caesare requirebat, occidit caputque eius praefixum hastae circumtulit. Postea solidam columnam prope 80 viginti pedum lapidis Numidici in Foro statuit inscripsitque PARENTI PATRIAE. Apud eam longo tempore sacrificare, vota suscipere, controversias quasdam interposito per Caesarem iure iurando distrahere perseveravit. 85



ROME: RUINS OF THE FORUM

Suspicionem Caesar quibusdam suorum reliquit neque voluisse se diutius vivere neque curasse quod valetudine minus prospera uteretur, ideoque et quae religiones monerent et quae renuntiarent amici
90 neglexisse. Sunt qui putent, confisum eum novissimo illo senatus consulto ac iure iurando etiam custodias Hispanorum cum gladiis adsectantium se removisse. Alii e diverso opinantur insidias undique imminentes subire semel quam cavere semper
95 sollicitum maluisse. Quidam dicere etiam solitum ferunt: non tam sua quam rei publicae interesse, uti

salvus esset; se iam pridem potentiae gloriaeque abunde adeptum; rem publicam, si quid sibi eveniret, neque quietam fore et aliquanto deteriore condicione civilia bella subituram. 100

Illud plane inter omnes fere constitit, talem ei mortem paene ex sententia obtigisse. Nam et quondam, cum apud Xenophontem legisset Cyrum ultima valetudine mandasse quaedam de funere suo, aspernatus tam lentum mortis genus subitam 105 sibi celeremque optaverat; et pridie quam occideretur, in sermone nato super cenam apud Marcum Lepidum, quisnam esset finis vitae commodissimus, repentinum inopinatumque praetulerat.

Periit sexto et quinquagesimo aetatis anno 110 atque in deorum numerum relatus est, non ore modo decernentium sed et persuasione volgi.

Percussorum autem fere neque triennio quisquam amplius supervixit neque sua morte defunctus est. Dammati omnes alius alio casu periit, pars naufragio, 115 pars proelio; nonnulli semet eodem illo pugione, quo Caesarem violaverant, interemerunt.

ST. JEROME

(HIERONYMUS)

circa A.D. 400

THE LAST VOYAGE OF ST. PAUL

From the Acts of the Apostles,

Chapters xxvii, xxviii

[ST. JEROME (A.D. 342-420), born of Christian parents in Pannonia (a Roman Province south and west of the Danube), took a very active part in the theological controversies that raged in the fourth century A.D., travelled widely all over the Roman Empire, and, at the end of his life retired to his monastery at Bethlehem.

His fame as a scholar rests chiefly on his writings which included, among many other books, his most famous work, the Latin version of the Bible which he completed in A.D. 405 from the original Hebrew and Greek. This version became the Bible of all the Western Christians, and is known as the Vulgate (i.e. current edition). A revised text of the Vulgate known as the Clementine¹ is the authorised text of the Roman Catholic Church.

The English Bible made by Wycliffe (1380), by Miles Coverdale (1535), and the Great Bible (of

¹ A recension made by order of Pope Clement VIII (1592-1605).

1539) were translated from the Vulgate. The version of the Psalms still used in the Prayer Book comes from the Vulgate—the reason why the Psalms in the Prayer Book differ from those in the Authorised version and later translations.

The extract below is taken from the Acts of the Apostles and the context is as follows:

After completing his three great missionary journeys in Asia Minor and Greece, Paul returned to Jerusalem in A.D. 58. On his arrival he encountered bitter opposition from the many Jews of Asia Minor, who could not forgive him his conversion to Christianity, and his successful missionary activity. For, especially in the big towns of the Greek World, he had converted many good-living pagans who had previously lived, so to speak, on the fringe of the synagogue, attracted to Judaism by its high ethical code, but unable to accept in full its Mosaic Law as regards circumcision and prohibited foods.

Such was their fanaticism that Paul was compelled to ask the Romans for protection. Finding himself in danger of assassination and unlikely to meet with a just trial from his countrymen, Paul decided to appeal to the Roman Emperor, as he was entitled to do as a Roman citizen. The appeal was accepted, and after two years' detention at Caesarea, he was allowed to go to Rome. We read in our extract an account of his perilous voyage thither from Palestine.]

Ut autem iudicatum est navigare eum in Italiam,
et tradi Paulum cum reliquis custodiis centurioni,
nomine Iulio, cohortis Augustae, ascendentes navem
Hadrumetinam, incipientem navigare circa Asiae
5 loca, sustulimus, perseverante nobiscum Aristarcho
Macedone, Thessalonicensi. Sequenti autem die
devenimus Sidonem; humane autem tractans Iulius
Paulum, permisit ad amicos ire, et curam sui agere.
Et inde cum sustulissemus, subnavigavimus Cypro,
10 propterea quod essent venti contrarii. Et pelagus
Ciliciae et Pamphyliae navigantes, venimus Lys-
tram, quae est Lyciae. Et ibi inveniens centurio
navem Alexandrinam navigantem in Italiam, trans-



COASTAL SCENERY OF CRETE

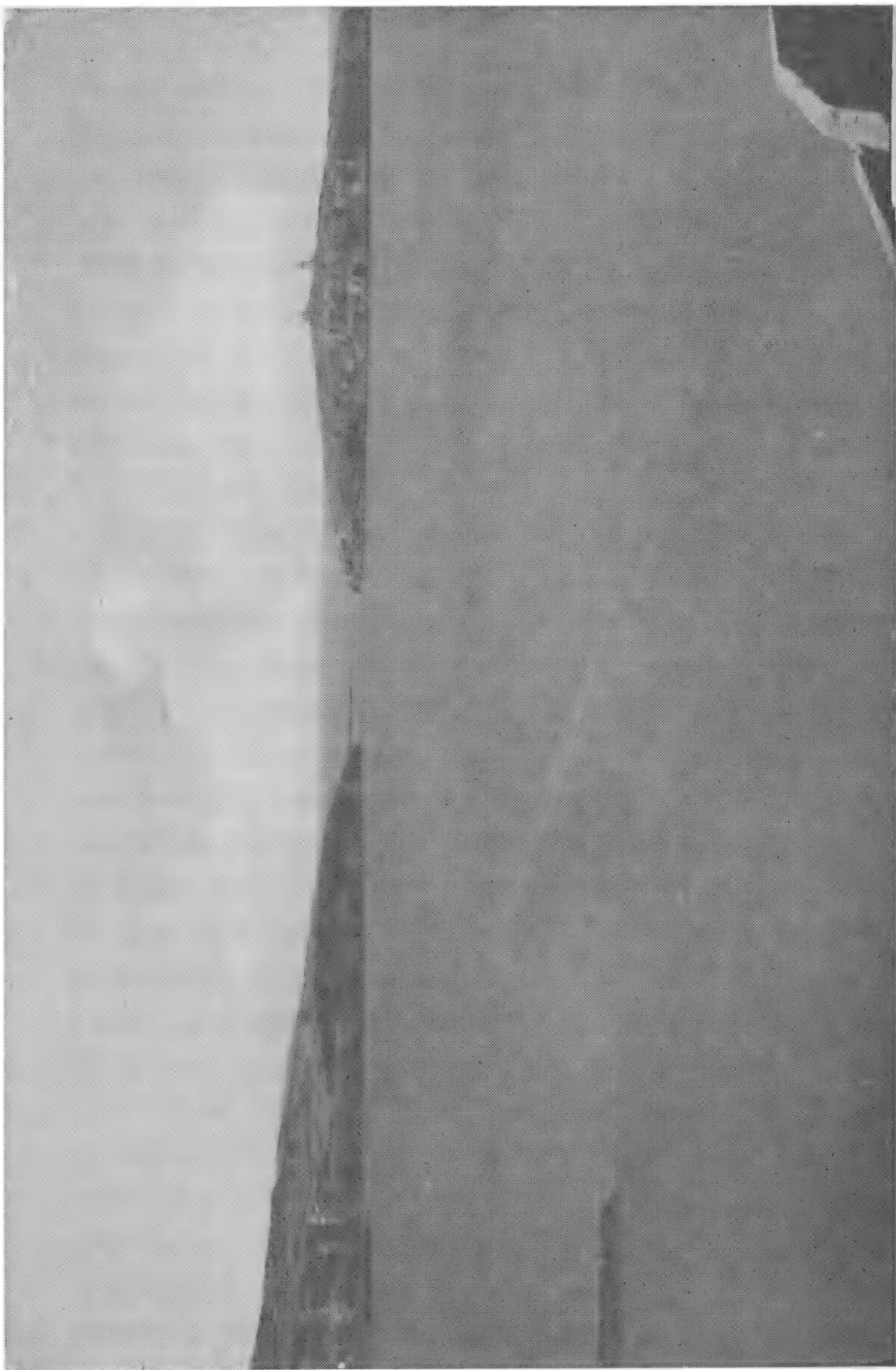
E.N.A.

posuit nos in eam. Et cum multis diebus tarde navigaremus, et vix devenissemus contra Cnidum, prohibente nos vento, adnavigavimus Cretae, secundum 15 Salmonem. Et vix iuxta navigantes, venimus in locum quendam, qui vocatur Boni Portus, cui iuxta erat civitas Thalassa. Multo autem tempore peracto, et cum iam non esset tuta navigatio, eo quod et 20 ieiunium iam praeteriisset, consolabatur Paulus, dicens eis: Viri, video quoniam cum iniuria et multo damno, non solum oneris et navis, sed etiam animarum nostrarum incipit esse navigatio. Centurio autem gubernatori et nauclerio magis credebat quam 25 his quae a Paulo dicebantur. Et cum aptus portus non esset ad hiemandum, plurimi statuerunt consilium navigare inde, si quo modo possent, devenientes Phoenicen hiemare, portum Cretae respicientem ad Africum et ad Corum. Adspirante autem austro, 30 aestimantes propositum se tenere, cum sustulissent de asson legebant Cretam. Non post multum autem misit se contra ipsam ventus typhonicus, qui vocatur Euroaquilo; cumque arrepta esset navis, et non posset conari in ventum, data nave flatibus, fere- 35 bamur. Insulam autem quandam decurrentes, quae vocatur Cauda, potuimus vix obtinere scapham. Qua sublata, adiutoriis utebantur, accingentes navem, timentes ne in syrtim inciderent; summisso vase sic ferebantur. Valide autem nobis tempestate iactatis 40 sequenti die iactum fecerunt. Et tertia die suis manibus armamenta navis proiecerunt. Neque sole

autem neque sideribus apparentibus per plures dies,
et tempestate non exigua inminente, iam ablata
45 erat spes omnis salutis nostrae. Et cum multa
ieiunatio fuisset, tunc stans Paulus in medio eorum
dixit: Oportebat quidem, o viri, audito me, non
tollere a Creta, lucrique facere iniuriam hanc et
iacturam. Et nunc suadeo vobis bono animo esse,
50 amissio enim nullius animae erit ex vobis, praeter-
quam navis. Adstitit enim mihi hac nocte angelus
Dei, cuius sum ego, et cui deservio, dicens: Ne
timeas, Paule; Caesari te oportet adsistere; et ecce
donavit tibi Deus omnes qui navigant tecum.
55 Propter quod bono animo estote, viri; credo enim
Deo, quia sic erit, quemadmodum dictum est
mihi. In insulam autem quandam oportet nos
devenire. Sed postea quam quarta decima nox
supervenit, navigantibus nobis in Hadria circa
60 mediam noctem, suspicabantur nautae apparere sibi
aliquam regionem. Qui summittentes invenerunt
passus viginti; et pusillum inde separati, invenerunt
passus quindecim.

Timentes autem ne in aspera loca incideremus,
55 de puppi mittentes anchoras quattuor, optabant
diem fieri. Nautis vero quaerentibus fugere de
navi, cum misissent scapham in mare, sub obtentu
quasi a prora inciperent anchoras extendere, dixit
Paulus centurioni et militibus: Nisi hi in navi man-
70 serint, vos salvi fieri non potestis. Tunc absciderunt
milites funes scaphae, et passi sunt eam excidere.

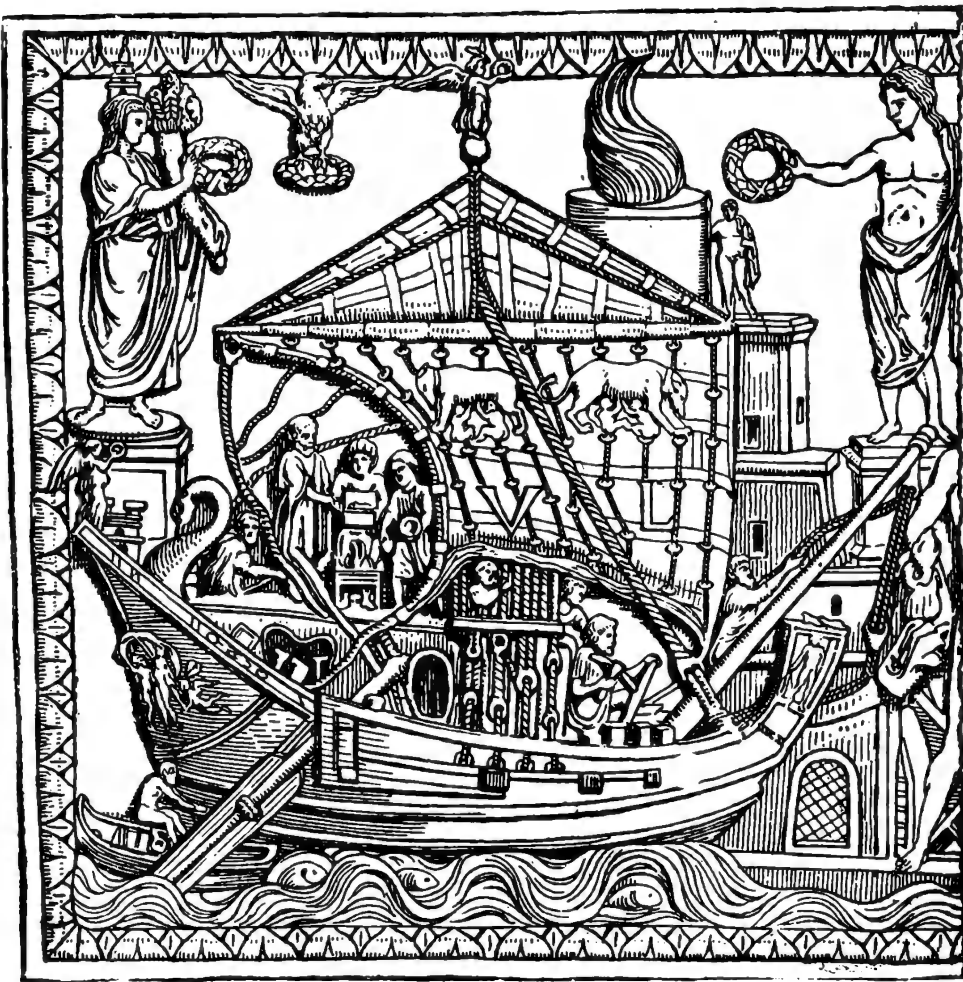
Et cum lux inciperet fieri, rogabat Paulus omnes sumere cibum, dicens: Quartā decima hodie die expectantes ieiuni permanetis, nihil accipientes; propter quod rogo vos accipere cibum pro salute 75 vestra; quia nullius vestrum capillus de capite peribit. Et cum haec dixisset, sumens panem, gratias egit Deo in conspectu omnium, et cum fregisset, coepit manducare. Animaequiores autem facti omnes, et ipsi adsumserunt cibum. Eramus vero 80 universae animae in navi ducentae septuaginta sex. Et satiati cibo, adleviabant navem iactantes triticum in mare. Cum autem dies factus esset, terram non agnoscebant: sinum vero quendam considerabant habentem litus in quem cogitabant, si possent, eicere 85 navem. Et cum anchoras abstulissent, committébant se mari, simul laxantes iuncturas gubernaculorum; et levato artemone, secundum flatum aurae tendebant ad litus. Et cum incidissemus in locum bithalassum, impegerunt navem, et prora quidem 90 fixa manebat immobilis, puppis vero solvebatur a vi maris. Militum autem consilium fuit ut custodias occiderent, ne quis, cum enatasset, effugeret. Centurio autem volens servare Paulum prohibuit fieri iussitque eos qui possent natare mittere se primos, 95 et evadere, et ad terram exire. Et ceteros, alios in tabulis ferebant, quosdam super ea quae de navi essent. Et sic factum est ut omnes animae evaderent ad terram. Et cum evasissemus, tunc cognovimus quia Melita insula vocatur. Barbari vero praesta- 100



E.N.A.

ST. PAUL'S BAY, MALTA

bant non modicam humanitatem nobis. Accensa enim pyra, reficiebant nos omnes, propter imbrem qui imminebat, et frigus. Cum congregasset autem Paulus sarmentorum aliquantam multitudinem, et inposuisset super ignem, vipera a calore cum proces- 105
sisset, invasit manum eius. Ut vero viderunt barbari pendentem bestiam de manu eius, ad invicem dicebant: Utique homicida est homo hic, qui cum evaserit de mari, ultio eum non sinit vivere. Et ille



ROMAN MERCHANT SHIP ALONGSIDE A QUAY
(Notice her insignia, figures of Victory at
the stern and upon the truck of the mast)

110 quidem excutiens bestiam in ignem nihil mali passus
est. At illi existimabant eum in tumorem conver-
tendum, et subito casurum et mori; diu autem illis
sperantibus, et videntibus nihil mali in eo fieri, con-
vertentes se, dicebant eum esse deum. In locis
115 autem illis erant praedia principis insulae, nomine
Publii, qui nos suscipiens triduo benigne exhibuit.
Contigit autem patrem Publii febribus et dysenteria
vexatum iacere. Ad quem Paulus intravit; et cum
orasset, et inposuisset ei manus, salvavit eum. Quo
120 facto, et omnes qui in insula habebant infirmitates
accedebant et curabantur. Qui etiam multis hono-
ribus nos honoraverunt, et navigantibus inposuerunt
quae necessaria erant. Post menses autem tres, navi-
gavimus in navi Alexandrina quae in insula hiema-
125 verat, cui erat insigne Castorum. Et cum venissemus
Syracusas mansimus ibi triduo. Inde circumlegentes
devenimus Regium; et post unum diem, flante
austro, secunda die venimus Puteolos. Ubi, inventis
fratribus, rogati sumus manere apud eos dies sep-
130 tem; et sic venimus Romam.

NOTES

CATO: HOW TO FARM

Line 1. **quom**, an old spelling of the conjunction **cum**.

l. 1. **parare** means 'buy', 'acquire', here.

l. 1. **cogitabis**. English prefers the *present* tense: 'when you *are thinking* of buying . . . '.

l. 1. **sic in animo habeto uti ne cupide emas**, *lit.*, 'so have (it) in your mind that you do not buy eagerly', i.e. 'be sure not to buy in a hurry'. **habeto** is a form of the 2nd sg. imperative active, less common than **habe**. **uti** is another form of the conjunction **ut**. In later Latin it was mostly dropped from similar sentences. Thus, 'mind you don't fall' is **cave ne cadas**.

l. 2. **neve opera tua parcas visere**, *lit.*, 'and that you do not spare your efforts to examine'. The meaning is 'nor omit to make a careful examination'. Note two points: (i) Cato constructs **parco** with acc., instead of the dative of classical Latin; (ii) **opera-parcere** forms a compound expression equivalent to a single verb capable of governing a dependent prolativ infinitive.

l. 3. **et ne satis habeas semel circumire**, 'and (mind) that you do not consider (it) sufficient to tour (the property) once'. 'Consider' is a frequent meaning of **habeo**.

l. 4. **ibis**. English would employ the present tense here, too.

l. 4. **quod bonum erit**. The clause is the *subject* of **placebit**: 'so often will (*that*) *which is good* please you more.' Observe that **erit** also must be rendered by a present. A paraphrase of this sentence is: 'if you find yourself increasingly pleased with a property the oftener you see it, you may be sure it is good.'

l. 4. **Vicini**, etc. Begin this sentence with the imperative **animum advertito**, the two words together meaning 'notice', and so much forming a single idea that they govern a direct

object, **id**, 'this'. The indirect question **vicini quo pacto niteant**, in apposition to **id**, means literally 'how the neighbours shine', i.e., 'how prosperous the neighbouring farmers are'. **pactum** is properly 'an agreement', but the phrase **quo pacto** is a common alternative for **quomodo**.

1. 6. **nitere**. The construction is **oportebit (eos) bene nitere**, 'it will be inevitable that they are well off'.

1. 6. **Et uti**, etc. **introeas** and **circumspicias** are jussive (command) subjunctives, which in early Latin are often found with **ut (uti)**. Their meaning is equivalent to that of the corresponding imperatives.

1. 6. **eo** is an adverb, 'thither', 'into it', the 'it' being the property which is being inspected.

1. 7. **uti** introduces a consecutive ('result') clause: 'in such a way that . . .'. The meaning of the sentence is, 'Don't commit yourself so far that you cannot decline the purchase.'

1. 7. **Uti bonum caelum habeat**, etc. **uti habeat**, 'let it have' is 3rd person jussive. Cf. **et uti introeas** above.

1. 8. **siet**, i.e. **sit**. This spelling occurs frequently.

1. 8. **solo bono**, i.e. **uti solo bono siet**, 'let it be of a good soil'. Descriptive phrases in English introduced by 'of' correspond frequently to Latin expressions in the ablative case, the use being termed the ablative of quality.

1. 8. **(uti) sua virtute valeat**. The emphatic word is **sua**: 'let it be prosperous because of its own qualities' (and not merely for some extraneous reason). **virtute** is the ablative of cause.

1. 9. **poteris**. Render this, too, by the English present.

1. 9. **siet** and the following verbs are jussive subjunctives, i.e. they express commands: 'let it be . . .'.

1. 10. **loco salubri**. Translate as if 'in' preceded these words, and supply **siet** with them.

1. 10. **copia** is nominative to **siet**: 'let (there) be plenty.' **aquarium** is also subject to the same verb.

1. 12. The last **siet** in the sentence has four subjects, **oppidum**,

mare, amnis, and via, and **prope** is the complement: 'let there be near-at-hand a flourishing town, or the sea . . .'.

l. 13. **siet**, jussive again: 'let it be' . . .

l. 13. **in his agris qui**, 'among such lands as'. **is qui** and **hic qui** not infrequently have this meaning.

l. 14. **qui in his agris**, etc. The **qui** clause refers to the following **eos**. It is a common thing in Latin for relative to come before antecedent. 'Let it pain those, who have sold farms in these parts, to have sold', or more idiomatically, 'Let those who sell farms in these parts be sorry to sell'. **vendiderint** is probably perfect subjunctive, and the use of the mood generic. When a relative clause refers not to actual individuals but to a genus or class, its verb is usually put in the subjunctive. Thus the Latin for 'the rich' is **ei qui divites sint**.

l. 15. **uti bene aedificatum siet**, jussive subjunctive again, with the accompanying **ut** of early Latin. See note on **uti bonum caelum habeat** above.

l. 16. **Caveto**. For the form compare **habeto**, l. 2.

l. 16. **contemnas**, connected with **caveto** by a suppressed **ne**: 'mind that you do not despise.' The negative drops out easily enough because the verb **caveo** is mostly used for exhortations *to avoid* doing this or that.

l. 17. **de domino**, etc. The sentence is a little idiomatic. The literal rendering is: 'It will be bought better from an owner a good farmer and a good builder', i.e. 'You will be better advised to buy from an owner who is a good farmer and a good builder.'

emetur has no real subject, but is an example of the impersonal use of the passive voice, seen for example in **pugnatur**. 'there is fighting'. The other difficulty is the placing of **colono** and **aedificatore** in apposition with **domino**, where English would employ a relative clause.

l. 18. **ad villam cum venies**. Begin with **cum** and translate **venies** by the present.

l. 18. **vasa torcula et dolia multane sient**. The clause is an indirect question dependent on **videto**. The enclitic **-ne** on the

end of **multa** means 'whether' and must be translated first in the clause. It is put instead of the regular **num**.

vasa torcula, 'apparatus for extracting the juice'. **vas** means normally any 'vessel' but is also a general word for 'utensil'. The adjective **torculus** is connected with **torqueo**, 'twist', and suggests the pressure under which grape and olive yielded their juice.

dolia, usually rendered 'casks', were large vessels of earthenware in which fermentation took place.

l. 19. **ubi non erunt**, supply **multa** and render **erunt** by the present.

l. 19. **pro ratione fructum esse**. **fructum** is subject of **esse** in the acc. and infin. construction and **pro ratione**, 'in proportion', is the complement.

l. 20. **videto**. After this take the following words in the order **ne ager sumptuosus siet**.

l. 21. **scito idem**, etc. Supply **esse**: 'know that a farm is the same as a man'. The relative pronoun **qui**, used in association with **idem**, corresponds to English 'as'.

l. 21. **quamvis**, etc. The rest of the sentence, beginning with this word, is still dependent on **scito**: 'that, however productive it is, if it is costly-to-run, not much is left'. The two subordinate clauses, being dependent on the acc. and infin. **non multum relinqui**, naturally have their verbs in the subjunctive.

l. 23. **praedium**, etc. Take the words in the order **si rogabis me quod praedium siet primum**. **quod** is interrogative adjective, **siet** subjunctive in indirect question, and **primum** means here 'most desirable'.

l. 24. **de omnibus agris**, etc. The order for translation is **centum iugera agri, de omnibus agris optimoque loco**: 'a hundred iugera of land, (consisting) of every-kind-of soil, and in an excellent situation.' A **iugerum** was about two-thirds the area of our acre.

l. 25. **vinea est prima**, etc. Cato proceeds to arrange nine types of farm in order of desirability. It is striking that he puts corn-land as low as the sixth place. The explanation lies partly in the loss of much arable land which resulted from the

Second Punic War, partly in the difficulty of making arable farming pay.

l. 25. **si vino bono et multo est**, 'if it is with . . . '—the abl. of description. We should say 'if its wine is good and plentiful'.

l. 27. **salictum**, i.e. for basket-making.

l. 29. **glandaria silva**, i.e. for feeding pigs.

l. 30. **familias**. This form is that of an old genitive singular.

l. 30 **larem familiarem**. The **lar familiaris** appears to have been originally the protecting divinity of the slaves (**famuli**), and later to have been worshipped by the whole household.

l. 32. **circumeat**, jussive subjunctive, 'let him . . .'. **vocet** and **roget** following are used similarly.

l. 33. **operaque quae = et quae opera**, **quae** being interrogative adjective.

l. 34. **eius diei**. The words often follow **postridie**, but add nothing to its meaning.

l. 35. **quid operis**, 'what of work', i.e., 'how much work'.

l. 36. **satisne**. **ne** here = **num**, 'whether'. **possitne** is similar.

l. 36. **possitne**. The subject is 'he', i.e. the **vilicus**.

l. 37. **quid factum vini**, i.e. **quid vini factum sit**. For **quid vini**, (**quid**) **frumenti**, (**quid**) **omnium aliarum rerum**, see the note on **quid operis** above.

l. 38. **ea**, the answers to these questions.

l. 39. **oportet (eum)**, 'it behoves (him)', i.e. 'he should'.

l. 39. **si ei opus non apparet**, 'if the work is not obvious to him', i.e., 'if the work done does not seem to him adequate'.

l. 40. **dicit**. **si** must be taken a second time before this word.

l. 40. **sedulo se fecisse**, 'that he has acted busily', i.e. 'has done his best'.

l. 42. **opus publicum effecisse**. **opus** is acc., object of **effecisse**; the subject is **servos**, to be supplied from the previous words. No doubt local government could call upon the estates of the neighbourhood to furnish slave-labour for public works, particularly the repair of roads.

l. 43. **operum operarumque**, 'of tasks (done) and hands (employed)'.

l. 44. **revoca**. Hitherto the *paterfamilias* has been spoken *at*—**circumeat**, etc.; now he is spoken *to*.

l. 44. **fuerint** is fut. perf. In such a clause English prefers the perfect.

l. 45. **quae opera**, etc. The indirect question depends on some such words as **commone eum**, 'remind him'.

l. 45. **feri potuerint**, 'were able to be done', i.e. 'could have been done'.

l. 45. **dolia lavari**. With these words begins a series of acc. and infins., **potuisse** (understood from **potuerint**) having to be supplied in each case: 'that wine vats could have been washed.'

l. 46. **picari**, to make the vats water-tight.

l. 47. **semen purgari**, the removal of husks, etc.

l. 48. **novos**, *sc. funes*.

l. 48. **familiam** is a collective noun for which, in the case of farm-workers, there is no English equivalent. Say 'the hands'. In connections other than agricultural we say 'the staff'.

l. 49. **per ferias**. Before this sentence, too, supply **commone vilicum. feriae**, 'holidays', seem to have excused the slaves from the ordinary productive work of the farm, but not from the series of laborious chores which follows, and which reads strangely as a list of holiday occupations.

l. 51. **fodiri**. **fodi** in later Latin.

l. 51. **pratun purgari**, doubtless of such weeds as thistles.

l. 52. **cum servi aegrotarint**, etc. This too is part of what the master is to say to the **vilicus**. **Cum** = 'since', and **aegrotarint** is for **aegrotaverint**, perfect subjunctive.

l. 53. **dari oportuisse**. Observe that **oportet**, not the dependent infinitive, is put in the past tense, and contrast the English 'ought not to have been given'.

l. 53. **ubi ea cognita**, etc. Cato returns to his advice to the owner. The infinitive **curare**, and the following **putare**, must be assumed to depend on something like **dominum oportet**, 'the

master should '. Then follow with **curare uti opera quae sint reliqua perficiantur**.

l. 56. **pabuli causa quae parata sunt**=**eorum quae parata sunt pabuli causa**, 'and of those things which have been purchased for fodder'.

l. 56. **rationem vinariam**, etc.—still dependent on **putare** (**oportet**) above.

l. 57. **venierit**. Distinguish this from **venerit** (from **venio**).

l. 58. **quod veneat**, 'for sale', *lit.*, 'which may be sold', a final clause.

l. 59. **uti paretur**, a jussive subjunctive of the kind first encountered in l. 6: **introeas**. The following subjunctives, **veneant**, **locentur**, **imperet**, **relinquat**, are all similar to **paretur**. The other subjunctives are generic.

l. 60. **quae opus sint locato**, 'what needs to be hired'. In this construction **opus** is virtually an indeclinable adjective, meaning 'necessary'. **locato** is the abl. sg. neuter of the perf. partic. pass. of **loco**. Compare this with the impersonal expression **opus est**, also found with the neuter participle in such expressions as **opus est properato**, 'there is need of haste'.

l. 61. **ea scripta**, 'those things written', i.e. 'his instructions in writing'. It is worth noting that the farm foreman of the second century B.C. is assumed to be literate.

l. 62. **consideret**, jussive subjunctive, 'let him . . . '.

l. 66. **ferramenta vetera, servum senem, servum morbosum**. This collocation of words reflects the hard and callous streak that characterized Cato himself, the Romans generally, and perhaps the Mediterranean races as a whole.

l. 67. **aliut**=**aliud**.

l. 69. **utatur**. Jussive subjunctive, like **consideret** above. Practically all the principal clauses in the following passage are of the same type.

l. 71. **si quis quid deliquerit**, 'if anyone shall have offended (in) anything'. Notice (i) how 'anyone' and 'anything' are translated after **si** (and **nisi, num, ne**); (ii) the adverbial accusative **quid**.

- l. 72. **bono modo**, abl. of manner.
- l. 73. **familiae male ne sit**; *lit.*, 'let it not be ill for the hands'
- l. 74. **mālo**, abl. sg. neuter of **malus**, 'bad', used as a noun, 'mischief'.
- l. 75. **vilicus si nolet male facere**. Observe how the subject comes *before* the conjunction which in English must begin the sentence. Immediately after **nolet** supply **familiam**.
- l. 75. **passus erit**, from **patior**.
- l. 76. After **sinat** supply **eum** (= **vilicum**).
- l. 79. **consideret (ut) quae dominus imperaverit fiant**, 'take thought in order that what the master shall have ordered may be done'.
- l. 80. **ne plus censeat**, etc. The order for translation is **ne censeat se sapere plus quam dominum**.
- l. 81. **amicos domini**, etc. **eos** is redundant. The literal rendering is: 'His master's friends, let him have them (as) friends to himself'.
- l. 82. **cui iussus siet, auscultet**. Expanded, this is: **auscultet ei, cui iussus sit auscultare**.
- l. 83. **Compitalibus**. This was a yearly festival in honour of the Lares. It took place at cross-roads, and was celebrated shortly after the Saturnalia, which fell in the second half of December. This may be one reason why Cato approves of the Compitalia as the sole allowable occasion for religious observances by the bailiff, for at that season of the year the rhythm of agricultural life was least likely to suffer from interruption.
- l. 86. **dederit nemini**, i.e. **ne cui det**. The perfect subjunctive is sometimes used in direct commands instead of the present.
- l. 87. **unde utenda roget**, 'from which to ask for things-he-needs-for-use'. **roget** is final subjunctive.
- l. 90. **die**, abl. of comparison, going with **diutius**.
- ll. 90, 91. **emisse, celavisse**. These do not appear to differ in meaning from the present infinitive. Similarly **consuluisse** below.

l. 91. **parasitum**, by derivation, 'one who eats beside (and at the expense of) another': 'a hanger-on', 'a sponger'.

l. 92. **haruspicem**, etc. Four names, variously derived, for persons claiming to have foreknowledge of the future: **haruspex**, one who inspected the entrails of sacrificed animals with a view to the detection of omens; **augur**, one who studied the flight, the songs, the feeding of birds, together with other phenomena, for the same purpose; **hariolus** = **haruspex**; **Chaldaeus**, one of the Chaldaeans, an Assyrian people, famous for their study of the stars.

l. 94. **opus rusticum**, etc. Begin **curet uti sciat facere**.

l. 96. **scibit**. In classical Latin **sciet**. **dormibit** in the next sentence is similar.

l. 97. **facient** is here used absolutely (i.e. without object) and is equal to **laborabunt**.

l. 99. **cubitu**, **cubitum**, the so-called supines, really the only cases in use (abl. and acc.) of a fourth declension verbal noun. **cubitu** = 'from bed' (*lit.*, 'lying'), **cubitum**, 'to bed'. In later Latin the supine in -u was mostly an ablative of respect; cf. **mirabile dictu**, 'wondrous in-the-telling'.

l. 100. **villam**. According to our ideas the word should be nom., subject of the **ut** clause: **prius videat uti villa siet clausa**.

l. 102. **vilicae quae sunt**, etc., i.e. **curato (ut vilica) faciat officia quae sunt vilicae**. In the imperative **curato**, and in the following **esto** and **facito**, Cato is addressing the **vilicus** directly.

l. 103. **uxorem**, '(as) a wife'. This use of apposition is common.

l. 103. **ea** is abl.

l. 104. **vicinas**. **utor** with acc. is ante-classical.

l. 105. **quam minimum**, 'as little as possible'. Cf. **quam celerrime**.

l. 106. **ad se**, 'to her own quarters'.

l. 107. **neve mandet, qui pro ea faciat**, 'nor entrust (it to another) to do on her behalf'. The verb **faciat** is final subjunctive and **qui** = **ut is**, as it does very often.

l. 109. *scito* is 3rd person, 'let her know'—not 2nd, as is *curato* above.

l. 110. *conversam*, from *converro*.

l. 110. *mundeque. mundamque* would be better grammar.

l. 111. *circumversum*. See note on *conversam* above.

l. 113. *in focum*. Presumably 'over the hearth'.

l. 115. *uti habeat*: the jussive subjunctive is here again accompanied by *ut*.

l. 116. *far*, the name of a kind of wheat which produced a particularly fine flour, 'spelt'.

CICERO: VERRES IS CHARGED WITH SACRILEGE

Line 1. **Segesta.** Cicero naturally follows the Roman tradition according to which Segesta, a town in the N.W. of Sicily near the coast, was founded as a colony of Aeneas after his escape from Troy. In all probability, the town belonged to a people known as Elysians, of Iberian race, who may have come from Italy or from Asia Minor and occupied a small extent of territory in the N.W. of the island.

l. 1. *iudices*, 'gentlemen of the jury'. At this time, the juries were drawn from senators, equites, and *tribuni aerarii*. The two latter groups were men of wealth and substance, with big financial and commercial interests, who had not obtained senatorial status by holding office in Rome. The senators had the highest social position, and the order of precedence was as given in the list above.

A general list of men selected to serve was made each year by the praetor urbanus, and from this list the particular jury for a particular trial was made up. Both the prosecutor and the defendant had a limited right of rejection.

l. 2. **ab Aenea.** Aeneas, the Trojan prince, escaped from the sack of Troy by the Greeks with his father Anchises and his son Iulus (Ascanius) and, along with a few followers, eventually

arrived in Italy after seven years' wandering in the Mediterranean, to establish a line from which sprang Romulus and Remus, the legendary founders of Rome.

l. 2. **a Troia**. The preposition with the name of the town means 'from the neighbourhood of Troy'. 'From Troy' is normally **Troiā**.

l. 3. **demonstrant**, 'they mention, *or* allege'; 'they', indefinite subject.

ll. 3, 6. **Segestani . . . arbitrantur**, 'the people of Segesta believe that they are united with Rome . . . '.

ll. 4, 5. **non solum . . . cognatione**, 'not only in unbroken alliance and friendship but also in . . .'. Note the ablative of respect.

l. 6. **hoc quondam oppidum**. The verbs of which **hoc oppidum** is the subject are **captum atque deletum est**, with which **quondam** is to be taken.

l. 8. **a Carthaginiensibus**. The Carthaginians secured a firm footing in the west of the island during the fifth century B.C. and were engaged in desultory and indecisive warfare with the Greek colonies in the east of the island during this and the succeeding century.

l. 9. **omnia . . . possent**, 'and everything which could be (for) a decoration to the city', i.e. 'and everything such as could decorate their city'. Note two points: (i) **possent**, the relative pronoun here introduces an adverbial clause of result (consecutive), 'everything (of such a kind) that could'; (ii) **ornamento**, predicative dative with a second dative **urbi**, a very common construction in Latin.

l. 11. **fuit**, '(there) was'. The subject is **simulacrum**.

ll. 12, 13. **cum . . . perfectum**. Order for translation is **cum praeditum summa . . . religione, tum perfectum singulari . . . artificioque**. Note **cum . . . tum**, 'not only . . . but also'. **religione**, 'sanctity'.

l. 13. **hoc**, i.e. the statue. **tantum**, 'only', 'merely'. **locum hominesque**, 'home and worshippers'.

l. 13. **hoc translatum**, 'it having been removed' = 'its re-

moval'. Cf. the note on l. 82. **mutarat**=**mutaverat**. Verb forms containing the letter **v** often drop that letter, and sometimes the following vowel.

l. 15. **religionem . . . conservabat**. Insert 'but', or 'while' before this clause to obtain the necessary contrast which Latin makes by mere apposition of the contrasted words, phrases, or clauses.

l. 17. **digna . . . videbatur**. Note the Latin idiom, 'it seemed worthy that they should worship it most reverently', i.e. 'it seemed worthy of their most reverent worship'. Cf. 'I deserve to be made dictator', **dignus sum qui dictator fiam**. In this construction **qui**=**ut** is and introduces an adverbial consecutive clause. Cf. **quae . . . possent** above, l. 9.

l. 17. **aliquot saeculis post**. In this phrase, **aliquot saeculis** is ablative of the measure of difference and **post** is an adverb: *lit.*, 'later by many generations'.

l. 18. **P. Scipio . . . cepit**, i.e. in 146 B.C. in the Third Punic War. This Publius Scipio had been adopted into the famous Scipio family. He was actually the son of another famous general, L. Aemilius Paulus.

l. 21. **cognorat**. See note on l. 13 above.

l. 21. **iubet**, historic present. Similarly **pollicetur**.

l. 21. **sibi . . . fore**, *lit.*, 'that it would be for a great care to him'. **curae**, predicative dative. See also l. 9. Translate, 'that he would take care that'.

ll. 22, 23. **ut . . . restituerentur**, *lit.*, 'that everything which had been of (=had belonged to) each (city) should be restored to the cities'.

fuissent represents an original future-perfect, and the subjunctive is due to the verb being in a clause subordinate in Indirect Speech.

l. 23. **alia . . . alia**, 'some things . . . other things'. Supply as the verb common to both subjects 'were restored'.

l. 25. **Phalaris**. He was tyrant of Agrigentum in Sicily (city on the south coast) from about 570-564 B.C., and was famous

for his cruelty and for the brazen bull in which he is said to have burnt alive his victims.

Most of the Greek cities in Sicily were ruled by tyrants—for dictatorship had been found by experience to be more effective in resisting Carthaginian aggression than democratic forms of government—and they were famous for the splendour of their courts and their colourful lives.

l. 26. **quo**, *lit.*, 'whither,' = 'into which'.

supplicii causa. Note **causa**, 'for the sake of' and the case (genitive) that *precedes* it.

l. 29. **redditur**, historic present. Similarly **reportatur** and **reponitur**.

l. 31. **Segestae**, locative case, 'in Segesta'.

l. 33. **incisum**, from **incido**, a compound of **caedo** (3), 'I cut'.

l. 33. **eum . . . restituisse**, acc. and infinitive, dependent on **perscriptum** (erat), 'it had been stated that he . . .'.

l. 34. **colebatur . . . visebatur**, the subject is 'the statue'.

l. 35. **cum quaestor essem**. Cicero was quaestor in 75 B.C. The quaestor was an official who had control over financial matters. In this case, Cicero was attached to the provincial governor.

l. 36. **nihil . . . prius**, *lit.*, 'nothing sooner was shown to me by them'. A sentence such as this would run more naturally in English in the active, 'they showed me . . .' or in the form 'I was shown nothing . . .'.

l. 36. **erat . . .**, '(it) was a very big and tall statue with a long robe'. The **stola** was a long upper garment worn by women.

l. 38. **verum . . . virginalis**, 'but however, there was (present) in spite of its size the age and bearing of a girl'.

Notice this use of **in** to mean 'in spite of' or 'considering'.

l. 40. **dextra**, abl. again, 'in her right hand'.

l. 41. **iste . . . praedoque**, 'yonder foe and despoiler of all sacred and holy things' is a description of Verres.

iste. Cicero points to him as he sits in court.

Note the use of **religionum**, gen. pl. of **religio**. Latin often uses abstract nouns in the plural where we prefer the concrete expression. Cf. **amicitiae** = 'friends'.

l. 42. **quasi . . . percussus esset**, 'as if he had been struck . . . '.

Note the subjunctive mood, used because the comparison is unreal.

l. 43. **flagrare**. This and the similar verb **ardere**, is frequently used metaphorically, 'to be inflamed (with passion)'.

l. 44. **imperat**, historic present. Note that in the subordinate clause **ut eam demoliantur**, indirect command, primary sequence is used.

l. 46. **dicere**, historic infinitive.

l. 47. **cum . . . tum**, 'not only . . . but also'.

l. 48. **legum et iudiciorum**, objective genitive, 'for the law and the courts'.

iudicium may mean 'trial', 'law-court', 'bench of jurors', or 'verdict', according to the context.

l. 48. **petere**, etc. The use of the historic infinitives here suggests rapidity of action.

l. 49. **tum . . . tum . . . tum**, 'now . . . now . . . now'.

l. 50. **populi . . . dicebant**, 'they kept on saying that that (i.e. the statue) was of (=belonged to) the Roman people'. Note the force of the imperfect **dicebant**.

l. 51. **nihil . . . habere**, 'that they had no (**nihil**) power in that matter (**in eo**), because . . . '.

potestatis, partitive genitive dependent on **nihil**.

l. 52. **imperator clarissimus**, i.e. Publius Scipio Africanus.

l. 54. **voluisset**, subjunctive in a clause subordinate in indirect speech. **volo** here means 'intend', a fairly common meaning.

l. 54. **nihilo remissius, multo vehementius**. Note the ablatives of the measure of difference **nihilo . . . multo** with the comparatives **remissius** and **vehementius**; *lit.*, 'more slackly by nothing, and even more fiercely by much'. For **nihilo remissius** we might say 'with no less energy'.

l. 55. **agitur**, 'was discussed'.

l. 56. **vehementer . . . reclamatur**, 'there is fierce opposition on the part of all'. Note **reclamatur**, an impersonal passive, and compare **pugnatur**, 'men fight', 'there is fighting'. Intransitive Latin verbs are frequently used in the passive (*but only impersonally*). So also **pernegatur**.

l. 58. **quidquid erat oneris**, 'whatever there was (of) burden'. Note the partitive genitive which is frequently used in Latin after nouns and adjectives which denote amount. This clause with the attached phrases **in . . . exigendis**, **in . . . imperando**, is the object of **imponebat**.

l. 58. **in nautis . . . exigendis**, **in frumento imperando** are two good examples of the gerundive construction which is necessary in the acc., dat., and ablative with a preposition where English uses the gerund (verbal noun) with a direct object. *Lit.*, 'in sailors . . . to be demanded', 'in grain to be requisitioned', i.e. 'in demanding sailors . . . , in requisitioning grain'.

As Roman provincial governors were not paid a salary or even given their expenses (not at least until the time of the Empire), it was natural for them 'to live on' the province in which they were stationed. The danger of such a system is obvious. Provincials, however, had one means of redress against unscrupulous governors, the right to prosecute them in Rome on a charge of extortion—a right which the Sicilians were exercising in the case of Verres.

l. 60. **aliquanto**, ablative of the measure of difference. Cf. note on **nihilo**, l. 54.

l. 61. **evocabat**, 'he called up for service'. The meaning of this is illustrated in the next two sentences.

l. 62. **optimum quemque et nobilissimum**. Note the Latin idiom for 'all the best and noblest men', *lit.*, 'each best and noblest'.

l. 63. **circum . . . rapiebat**, 'he hurried them around all the assize-towns of the province'. For judicial purposes the province was divided into districts (**fora**), in the chief town of which cases would be tried before the governor and local men whom he would select from the most distinguished families of

the neighbourhood. In this case, Verres compelled the Segestans to accompany him on his tour of the circuits and thus to do duty outside their own district.

l. 64. **calamitati**, predicative dative with a second dative **uni cuique** dependent on it; 'he declared that he would be (for) a disaster to each one'. English says 'would be the ruin of'.

l. 65. **funditus**, an adverb.

l. 66. **aliquando**, adv., 'at last'.

l. 68. **decreverunt**, 'resolved'. **parendum esse**, 'that they must obey'. Note the gerundive of the intransitive **pareo** used impersonally (i.e. in the neuter).

l. 68. **cum . . . cum . . .**, 'amid . . . amid . . .'.

l. 70. **simulacrum . . . locatur**, *lit.*, 'the image of Diana to be removed is put out to contract', i.e. 'the removal of the statue . . .'.

l. 72. **religio**, 'religious feeling'.

l. 73. **scitote**. **scito** and **scitote** are the only forms of the imperative of **scio**.

l. 75. **qui . . . auderet**, 'to dare'. The relative pronoun frequently introduces adverbial clauses, of purpose, or result, or reason, or concession. When it does, the verb is in the subjunctive. Here we have an adverbial clause of result (consecutive) for **qui = talis ut is**, 'of such a kind that he'.

l. 76. **Lilybaeo**, 'from Lilybaeum', ablative of place whence. No preposition is necessary with the name of a town. Lilybaeum was a port in the west of Sicily, founded by the Carthaginians, and, to judge from the word **barbaros**, was still inhabited by their descendants.

l. 77. **illud**, i.e. the statue.

l. 78. **sustulerunt**, perfect of **tollo**.

l. 78. **quod**, co-ordinating relative, very common in Latin which likes to link its clauses much more closely than English does. Translate as usual by a demonstrative or personal pronoun; here 'it'.

l. 78. **cum** is here followed by the indicative **mood**, although

the sequence is historic: hence it must have the meaning 'at the time when'.

l. 79. **factum esse**, '(there) was'.

l. 80. **maiorum natu**, 'of the greater by birth', i.e. 'of the older generation'.

l. 82. **illa . . . revecta**, *lit.*, 'that same (statue of) Diana to Segesta from Carthage having been carried back' = 'the bringing back of that same . . .'. Cf. **urbs condita**, 'the city having been founded' = 'the foundation of the city'. Cf. also **simulacrum . . . tollendum**, l. 70.

The phrase above is the subject of **nuntiasset** (= **nuntiavisset**).

l. 84. **quam**, 'how'. Note that **dissimilis** is followed by a dative **illi tempori**.

l. 87. **praetor**, i.e. Verres. It was customary at this time for consuls and praetors to have a provincial governorship after their year of office in Rome. As governors, they held office as **pro consule**, **pro praetore**.

l. 87. **praetor turpissimus atque impurissimus**. Cicero's superlatives are often best rendered by an English intensive phrase, 'the praetor, the filthiest of villains'.

l. 89. **hoc**, ablative of comparison; **tota Sicilia**, 'throughout the whole of Sicily', ablative of place where.

l. 90. **omnis . . . matronas . . . convenisse, . . . unxisse**, etc., acc. and infin. dependent on **clarius**, 'better-known . . . than that all the matrons . . .'.

l. 92. **complexa**, 'crowned'.

l. 93. **ture odoribus incensis**, 'with burned incense (and) spices', i.e. 'with the burning of incense and spices'. For the translation of the perfect participle passive by an English noun, cf. l. 82.

l. 93. **finis**, acc. pl. Cf. **omnis** above.

l. 93. **prosecutas esse**, 'escorted'. The object of all the infinitives (except **convenisse**) is 'it', i.e. 'the statue'.

l. 94. **hanc tantam religionem**, the regular Latin for 'such great religious veneration as this'.

l. 94. **tum in imperio**, 'at that time (when you were) in power'.

l. 95. **non pertimescebas**. The **non** must be taken very closely with the verb, to form a negative expression, i.e. 'you failed to be in awe of'.

l. 96. **in . . . periculo**, *lit.*, 'in your and your children's so great danger', i.e. 'when you and your children are in such great peril'.

l. 97. **quem . . . putas**. Order for translation, omitting the first **aut** (unnecessary in English), **quem hominem immortalibus dis invitis aut vero (quem) deum tantis . . . violatis putas futurum auxilio tibi**.

Note: (i) the two ablative absolutes **dis . . . invitis, tantis . . . violatis**. Translate by 'when' clauses. (ii) **auxilio**, predicative dative.

l. 100. **in pace atque in otio**, 'at a time of real peace'. For this translation compare, **te oro atque obsecro**, 'I earnestly beseech you'.

l. 100. **religionem nullam**, 'no (feeling of) reverence'.

l. 101. **cum**, 'although'. **quae**, see the note on l. 78.

l. 101. **urbis**, acc. pl., like **finis**, l. 93.

l. 102. **bis**, i.e. when Segesta was captured by the Carthaginians (l. 8), and when Carthage was captured by the Romans.

l. 103. **quae**. Supply an antecedent, '(the statue) which . . .'.

l. 104. **victoria**, ablative. **loco mutato**; this abl. abs. will be most appropriately rendered by a concessive clause.

l. 104. **religionem**, 'sanctity'.

l. 106. **quo . . . suscepto**. Translate by a 'when' clause.

l. 109. **religiones**, 'sacred things', as in l. 100 above.

l. 111. **gloriam, memoriam, monumenta**, objects of **sustulisse** of which **Verrem** is the subject.

P. Africani . . . victoriae. Notice the parallelism of the phrases; **P. Africani, viri fortissimi, rerum gestarum gloriam**, is balanced by **memoriam virtutis**, etc. This inversion in a second phrase or clause of the order followed in the first is

known as chiasmus, from the Greek letter *khi*, which is shaped like the English X. Cf. the English, 'To stop too fearful, and too faint to go'. Write the two phrases one below the other, and draw lines between the corresponding terms to obtain the shape of the letter *khi*.

ll. 109-112. **non solum religiones . . . sustulisse**, acc. and infin. dependent on **res indigna atque intoleranda videbatur**, 'it seemed an unworthy and intolerable thing to all that not only . . . '.

l. 112. **isti**, dative. **quod**, co-ordinating relative, 'this', to be translated *after cum*, which here means 'when'.

l. 114. **tamquam indicem**, 'the witness, so to speak, of his guilt'. **tamquam** is often used by Cicero to apologise for or soften down a metaphor.

l. 115. **itaque . . . locaverunt**, 'and so at the fellow's command, they put out to contract it to be removed (i.e. its removal)'.

l. 116. **quae locatio**, 'and this putting out to contract'.

l. 117. **priore actione**, 'at the first trial'.

SALLUST

Line 1. **dicundi**, i.e. **dicendi**, the genitive of the gerund.

l. 1. **verbo**, *lit.*, 'with a word', i.e. 'briefly'.

l. 1. **ceteri alius alii adsentiebantur**, 'the rest agreed, one with one [speaker] (and one with another)'. For this idiomatic use of the word **alius**, repeated, in the one sentence, in different cases, compare **alii alia sentiunt**, 'some think one thing, (some another)'. In the present example **alius** is nom. in apposition to **ceteri**, and **alii** dative, the case regularly governed by the verb **adsentior**.

l. 3. **rogatus sententiam**, 'having been asked his opinion'. The Latin verb **rogo**, like the English verb 'ask', can take two direct objects when used in the *active* voice, and keep one of them in the *passive*. Such an object is called a 'retained

accusative'. Exactly similar is **doctus musicam**, 'having been taught music'.

l. 3. **huiusce modi**, 'of this sort', or perhaps we should say 'to the following effect'.

l. 4. **Longe mihi alia mens est**, 'my view is very different', *lit.*, 'to me there is a mind very different'.

l. 4. **patres conscripti**. This phrase, meaning 'enrolled fathers', is the usual formula for 'senators'.

l. 5. **res atque pericula nostra**. **nostra** goes in grammar with **pericula**, in sense with **res** as well: 'our situation and our dangers', i.e. 'our dangerous situation'. This idiom, by which two nouns are put where we should expect noun and adjective, is called hendiadys. Cf. the following bolder example, **pateris et auro**, 'from bowls and gold', i.e. 'from golden bowls'.

l. 7. **patriae** and the three datives that follow are datives of disadvantage, depending on **bellum paravere**: 'have planned war upon their country'.

l. 8. **paravere**, the alternative form of the 3rd pl. perf. indic. active, replacing the more usual **paraverunt**.

l. 9. **res** is used in the same meaning here as was the plural in l. 5, 'situation'.

l. 9. **monet**. The direct object is **nos** understood.

ll. 9, 10. **cavere, consultare**. The infinitives follow quite naturally to our minds, but in Cicero or Caesar we should have **ut**+subjunctive.

l. 9. **quid in illos statuamus**, 'what we are to decide against them', i.e. 'what penalty we are to fix for them'. **statuamus** is subjunctive in an indirect deliberative question.

l. 11. **tum persequare**. **tum** is redundant, merely serving to underline **ubi facta sunt**. **persequare** (for **persequaris**, 2nd sg. pres. subj.) is the subjunctive of the ideal 2nd person, corresponding to the English 'one', or to the indefinite use of 'you': 'one may punish'.

l. 11. **hoc nisi**, etc. **hoc** is nom., subject to **accidat**, but is put first for emphasis. In English, with its less flexible word-

order, we achieve a similar effect thus: 'but as for *this* (crime), unless one took care that it did not happen . . .'. **provideris** and **implores** are conditional subjunctives, **accidat** final.

l. 12. **iudicia**, *lit.*, 'law courts'; say 'the succour of the law'. The meaning is clear enough. Revolution, which destroys law, is the one crime against which, once it is successful, appeals to law are vain.

l. 13. **capta urbe**, abl. abs., 'when a city is captured'.

l. 13. **nihil fit reliqui**, 'nothing is left', but literally **reliqui** is gen. sg. neut. of **reliquus**, -a, -um, and depends on **nihil**, 'nothing of left'. Cf. the French *rien de nouveau* for 'no news'.

l. 13. **victis**, dat. pl. masc. of the perf. partic. pass. of **vinco**.

ll. 14, 16. **vos . . . qui . . . fecistis**. Cato, a Stoic philosopher, castigates his fellow-senators for having put their private interests before those of the state.

l. 15. **pluris**, 'more highly'.

l. 16. **fecistis**. **facio** here means 'value', in which sense it is frequently used. With it, and with other words of like meaning, locatives such as **magni**, 'at a great amount', 'highly', were used. These in time became regarded as genitives and such forms as **pluris** were employed by false analogy.

l. 16. **ista**, contemptuous, 'those (treasures) of yours'. It is the object of **retinere**, which depends on **voltis** (i.e. **vultis**, from **volo**). The latter must be taken twice, with each of the two **si** clauses.

l. 16. **cuiuscumque modi . . . amplexamini**, 'of whatsoever sort they are which you cling to'. Not all the senators who fall under Cato's censure covet the same things. The clause is also meant to indicate the speaker's own attitude of contemptuous indifference to such things.

l. 18. **expergiscimini**, imperative.

l. 19. **non agitur de**, 'it is not a question of'. **agitur** is the impersonal passive, a use of the 3rd sg. passive without a subject, expressing merely that action is taking place of the kind denoted by the verb used. Cf. **pugnabatur**, 'fighting was going on'. Here then **agitur** = approximately 'there is discussion'.

l. 20. **sociorum iniuriis**, 'the wrongs of subject peoples', i.e. the wrongs done *to* them, objective genitive. **socii**, 'allies', is the regular word for peoples subject to Rome. Cato's words suggest, as was in fact the case, that the misgovernment of provinces by members of their own order was a frequent subject of debate.

l. 22. **multa verba feci**, 'I have spoken at length'. **verbum facere** is good Latin for 'I speak (in public)'.
 · l. 22. **in hoc ordine**. The word **ordo**, 'order', was used much as our own parliamentarians speak of 'this house'.

l. 25. **ea causa**, 'on that account', ablative of cause.

l. 25. **advorsos** (a spelling of **adversos**), 'hostile (to me)'.

l. 25. **Qui . . . fecissem**, 'I, who never to myself and my own inclination (**animo**) had granted indulgence in any wrongdoing'. Note three things here. (i) This translation renders **nunquam ullius** instead of **nullius unquam**, which goes harder in English. (ii) **nullius delicti**. The phrase **gratiam facere** takes the genitive case. (iii) **fecissem**. It is regular in Latin to use the subjunctive in relative clauses which are really adverbial rather than adjectival. In the present case the **qui** clause actually gives the reason: 'seeing that I . . .'.

l. 27. **condonabam**. The verb governs two cases, direct object **male facta**, indirect object **libidini**: 'I did not readily forgive crimes to the lust of my neighbour', i.e. 'I did not readily forgive my neighbour for the crimes of his lust'. In this sentence there appears to be deliberate contrasting of **animus**, '*reasoned* inclination' with **libido**, '*blind* passion', and of **delictum** with the much stronger **male factum**.

l. 28. **ea**, neuter pl., is the object of **pendebatis**. It refers to **male facta**, or perhaps to **verba**.

l. 28. **parvi**, 'as of small account'. It is the genitive of value, so-called, which, as explained in the note on **pluris**, l. 15, is properly a locative.

l. 29. **opulentia**, probably nom. The republic was so prosperous that the neglect of its ruling class did not have immediate effect.

l. 30. **agitur** has the same sense as in l. 19: 'the question is', but is not this time used impersonally. **id**, which merely anticipates the indirect questions that follow, may be ignored.

l. 30. **bonisne**. **-ne** = 'whether'.

l. 30. **bonis an malis moribus**, 'in good or evil ways', abl. of manner.

l. 31. **vivamus**, 'we are to live', subjunctive in indirect deliberative question, like **statuamus**, l. 10.

l. 32. **sit**, 'is to be', same use of the subjunctive as **statuamus** above.

l. 32. **sed haec**. Take **-ne** again with these words: 'but whether these things . . . '.

l. 32. **cuiuscumque modi videntur**, 'of whatever sort they seem', i.e. 'whatever you think of them'.

l. 33. **nostra, hostium**. These words are contrasted, 'ours, or the enemies'.

l. 33. **nobiscum una**, 'together with ourselves'. **una** is an adverb, often found thus in association with the preposition **cum**.

l. 34. **futura sint**, 'are going-to-be'. **sint**, subjunctive in indirect question.

l. 34. **hic**, an adverb, 'here', 'at this point'.

l. 34. **quisquam**. Since this pronoun is only used in sentences in which a negative is expressed or implied, we have here a question expecting the answer 'no', which might have been more normally conveyed by **num quis**, 'surely-not anyone'.

l. 36. **Quia bona aliena**, etc. The verb **vocatur** has two subjects, **largiri** and **audacia**, and two complements, **liberalitas** and **fortitudo**. **bona aliena** is direct object of **largiri**: 'to give away prodigally the wealth of others'. The reference is again to the despoiling of subject peoples by extortionate governors. Apparently these applied the wealth thus gained to the purchase of popularity by largesse.

l. 37. **malarum rerum** is objective genitive dependent on **audacia**: 'the daring of evil deeds'.

l. 38. **eo**, abl. of cause, 'for *that* reason', referring to the **quia** clause preceding. The plight of the country is due to the loss of moral standards reflected in the distorted meanings now given to words.

l. 39. **sint sane**, 'by all means let them be', **sint** being the subjunctive of command, called 'jussive'.

l. 39. **quoniam . . . habent**, 'since that is our morality', *lit.*, 'since morals have themselves thus'.

l. 40. **sociorum**. For this use of the word see the note on l. 20.

l. 40. **in furibus**, 'in the case of robbers'. **in** often has this sense.

l. 41. **largiantur** is jussive, like **sint** above, but this time negative: 'let them not squander'.

l. 41. **dum parcant**, *lit.*, 'while they spare', answering to our mode of expression 'in sparing'.

l. 42. **perditum eant**, 'proceed to destroy'. **eant** is also jussive subjunctive, and **perditum** is the supine in **-m**, which is used after verbs of motion where English uses an infinitive of purpose. Cf. **lusum it Maecenas, dormitum ego Vergiliusque**, 'Maecenas goes to play, Vergil and I to sleep'.

l. 42. **bonos**, 'good men', is the object of **perditum**.

l. 43. **paulo ante**, 'a while ago', *lit.*, 'earlier by little', **paulo** being the ablative of the measure of difference.

l. 44. **credo** is in parenthesis, outside the construction of the sentence: 'considering untrue, I suppose, those things . . . '.

l. 45. **divorso itinere . . . habere**. The construction of this is acc. and infin. in apposition to **ea**: 'that the wicked, (traveling) by a road opposite to the good, inhabit . . . '. Notice the condensed comparison in **divorso a bonis**. We should expect **divorso ab itinere bonorum**, 'opposite to that taken by the good'.

l. 47. **publicandas (esse)**, 'should be confiscated', the gerundive expressing obligation.

l. 48. **ipsos**, 'the men themselves', the conspirators arrested by Cicero.

l. 48. **per municipia**, 'in various country towns'. Observe the force of **per** here. The suggestion of Caesar is that no town should form the prison of more than one of the arrested men.

l. 48. **habendos** (*esse*), 'should be kept', same construction as **publicandas**.

l. 49. **sint**, **eripiantur**. The latter is subjunctive in a noun clause dependent upon a verb of fearing; **sint** is in the same mood because it is the verb of a subordinate clause in reported speech.

l. 50. **per vim**, a phrase equivalent to an adverb, 'forcibly'.

l. 51. **tantum modo**, 'only', a meaning which each of the two words can have separately.

l. 52. **sint**, 'existed'. The subjunctive is regular in clauses which, like this, introduce unreal comparisons. Cf. **titubat quasi ebrius sit**, 'he is staggering as if he were drunk', (implying that he is *not* drunk).

l. 52. **aut**. A second **quasi** clause follows. **ibi** is redundant, merely anticipating **ubi**, and should therefore not be translated.

l. 52. **non plus possit**, 'was not more powerful'. Notice this meaning of **possum**. **plus** is adverbial accusative of extent of action. Cf. **multum me iuvit**, 'he helped me much'.

l. 53. **ad defendendum**, 'for warding off', i.e. 'for resistance'.

l. 54. **minores**, 'too little', 'inadequate'. 'Too' is a regular meaning of the comparative degree.

l. 54. **Qua re**, 'on which account', 'therefore', abl. of cause.

l. 55. **metuit**. The subject of this verb, and of **timet** following, is Caesar.

l. 56. **eo magis**, 'so much the more', *lit.*, 'more by that amount', same use of the abl. case as **paulo**, l. 43.

l. 56. **me** is the subject of **timere**: 'that I should fear'. There is a suggestion here that Caesar is not disinterested in his advocacy of lenience but has some connection with, and sympathy for, the revolutionaries.

l. 57. **P. Lentulo**, the most important of the conspirators seized by Cicero.

l. 58. **statuetis**. English prefers the present.

l. 58. **habetote** = **habete**, imperative.

l. 58. **vos . . . discernere**. The acc. and infin. depend on **pro certo habetote**.

l. 58. **de exercitu**. Catiline has withdrawn from the city, and is recruiting a motley force of malcontents, gladiators, and runaway slaves in Etruria.

l. 60. **quanto . . . tanto**. These words, really ablatives of the measure of difference, meaning 'by so much as', answer to the idiomatic English use of 'the' with comparatives: 'the more energetically you do these things, the weaker will be their confidence'. Notice here (i) **agetis**, future where our idiom is the present; (ii) **ea**, where **haec** might have been looked for; (iii) the dative **illis** where we should expect a possessive genitive. The latter is very common.

l. 61. **vos languere** is acc. and infin. dependent on **viderint**. The latter is fut. perf. but English usage in similar cases is the present.

l. 63. **armis** is the emphatic word in this sentence, and we can only obtain a similar emphasis by some such device as this: 'Do not think that *it was by arms that . . .*'.

l. 64. **esset, haberemus**. Conditional sentences in which the imperfect subjunctive is used assume things to be the case which are actually otherwise, and then state a consequence from the unjustified assumption: 'if that were the case, the republic would now be in by far its most prosperous state' (*lit.*, 'we should now have it by much most beautiful'). **multo** is the ablative of the measure of difference.

l. 67. **maior copia nobis quam illis est**, 'to us there is greater abundance than to them', or as we should prefer to say 'we have greater abundance than they'. This use of the dative case in association with the verb **sum** is called the dative of the possessor.

l. 67. **alia fuere**. **alia** is nom. pl. neuter, 'other things', and **fuere** (= **fuerunt**) = 'there were'. No equivalent exists in Latin for this introductory use of 'there'.

l. 68. **quae nobis nulla sunt**, 'which are to us none', i.e. 'which we do not possess at all', **nobis** being the dative of the possessor again.

l. 70. **liber**. Cato explains what he means by this adjective in the following words.

l. 72. **publice egestatem, privatim opulentiam**. The public treasury is empty while individual citizens are very rich.

l. 74. **discrimen** is subject to **est**, 'there is', understood.

l. 75. **ambitio**. This use of the abstract for the concrete, (for the word is really put for **ambitiosi**, 'careerists'), is extremely natural in English, less so in Latin.

l. 75. **Neque mirum, sc. est**.

l. 77. **hic**, adv., 'here', 'in this house'.

l. 77. **eo fit ut**, 'the result is that', *lit.*, 'because-of-that it happens that'.

l. 78. **fiat**. The **ut** clause, with its verb in the subjunctive, is the subject of **fit**.

l. 80. **incendere**. The infinitive is one of purpose depending on **coniuravere**, 'have conspired to burn'. But such a use of the mood is contrary to normal Latin usage, which would be an **ut** clause with subjunctive.

l. 80. **gentem infestissimam**. In her earlier history Rome had had to deal with repeated inroads by the Gauls, whose territory had included all the most northerly part of Italy itself.

l. 82. **supra caput est**, 'is above our heads', picturesque writing for 'is threatening us'.

l. 83. **intra moenia** goes closely with **deprensus**.

l. 84. **hostibus** may be dative or ablative. In English too we can say either 'what will you do *to* him', or '*with* him?'

l. 84. **faciatis**. Subjunctive in indirect deliberative question: 'what you are to do?' The direct question that the senators were asking themselves was **quid faciamus?** 'what are we to do?'

l. 84. **misereamini** is jussive subjunctive—i.e. equivalent to an imperative, and **censeo** is outside the construction of the

sentence: 'Pity (them), I recommend'. It goes without saying that the advice is bitterly ironical. [Alternatively we can explain **misereamini censeo** as = **censeo (ut) misereamini**.]

l. 85. **deliquere**, 3rd pl. perf. indic. act. of **delinquo**.

l. 86. **ne ista vobis**, etc. **ne** is the interjection, meaning 'assuredly'. The subjunctives are conditional, 'should take up', 'would turn'.

vobis appears most naturally in English as a possessive adjective, qualifying **miseriam**, 'to your distress'. It is a dative, 'for you', literally.

l. 89. **Immo vero maxime**, supply **timetis**, repeated from the preceding sentence.

l. 90. **inertia et mollitia**. These are ablatives of cause: 'from . . . '.

l. 90. **alius alium expectantes**, 'gazing one at the other'. **alius** is nom. in apposition to each of the individuals who make up the plural subject of **cunctamini**.

l. 94. **auxilia**. The plural is usually concrete in meaning, 'auxiliary forces'; here it is used without distinction of meaning from the singular.

l. 95. **prospera** goes with **cedunt** to form the predicate: 'all things turn out well'.

l. 96. **tradideris, implores**. The subjunctive is that of 'the ideal 2nd person' again, i.e. the speaker has no particular real hearer in mind. In English we may use 'one' or 'you'. 'When you have abandoned yourself . . . '.

l. 98. **bello Gallico**, abl. of time, 'in . . . '. The date of the incident was 340 B.C. and it really occurred in a Latin, not a Gallic war.

l. 100. **immoderatae fortitudinis**. The genitive depends on **poenas**.

l. 102. **quid statuatis**, indirect deliberative question, 'what you are to decide', 'what decision you should come to'. It depends on **cunctamini**, which must be translated first.

l. 103. **Videlicet** often indicates, as it does here, that a statement is ironical.

l. 103. **obstat**, *lit.*, 'stands in the way of', i.e. is inconsistent with, and so 'atones for'.

l. 104. **verum**, 'by all means', a meaning for which most writers put **vero**. But Sallust deliberately affected an old-fashioned style, and is moreover putting words into the mouth of Cato, a conservative in language as in all else.

l. 104. **Lentuli**. A noble of disgraceful life who held office as praetor in the year of the conspiracy and was Catiline's principal lieutenant.

l. 106. **Cethegi**, a tribune.

l. 106. **iterum** is emphatic: 'unless *this is the second time that . . .*'.

l. 107. **nam** modifies an unspoken thought: ('I will say no more of the prisoners), for why . . . '.

l. 108. **loquar**, deliberative subjunctive, 'should I speak'.

l. 108. **Quibus si quicquam**, etc., *lit.*, 'to whom if there had ever been anything of weight', i.e. 'if they had ever had any sense of responsibility'.

l. 109. **ea**, 'such'.

l. 110. **habuissent**, 'they would not have entertained'. These are the regular meanings of the pluperfect subjunctive in conditional sentences.

l. 111. **esset**, **paterer**, 'there were', 'I would permit'. For the meaning of the imperfect subjunctive in conditional sentences see the note on **esset** and **haberemus**, l. 64.

l. 111. **ipsa re**, 'by actual experience'. Observe how wide a range of meanings **res** can have.

l. 113. **faucibus urget**, 'is at our throats'. In grammar **faucibus** appears to be an abl. of place without preposition.

l. 114. **in sinu urbis**, 'in the bosom of the city', a picturesque expression saying no more than the **intra moenia** which has preceded.

l. 115. **neque parari**, etc. 'Preparation in secret, deliberation in secret are alike impossible'—because of the presence

in the city and the senate of Catiline's sympathisers. What is the literal translation of the words?

l. 116. **quo**, 'on which account', abl. of cause.

l. 116. **properandum est**, the neuter of the gerundive, used independently to express obligation: 'there is need of haste'. Contrast with this the use, l. 47, **pecunias publicandas esse**, where the gerundive is an adjective agreeing with **pecunias**.

l. 117. **Qua re**, 'on which account', 'therefore', abl. of cause. Latin is fond of beginning fresh sentences, and even fresh paragraphs, with relative pronouns.

l. 117. **cum**, causal, 'since'. Observe the subjunctives, regular with **cum** in this sense.

l. 119. **indicio T. Volturcii et legatorum Allobrogum**. These 'envoys of the Allobroges', a Gallic tribe, who chanced to be present at Rome, had been approached by the conspirators with a proposal for an alliance but had revealed these overtures to the consul Cicero. Volturcius, a minor figure, had been sent with the envoys to bring them to Catiline for the purpose of ratifying the proposed alliance, and being arrested, disclosed all he knew upon being given a guarantee of personal immunity.

l. 120. **convicti confessique sint**. The first verb is passive, the second deponent: 'have been convicted, and have admitted'.

l. 120. **se paravisse** is acc. and infin. construction, depending on **convicti confessique sint**: 'that they planned'.

l. 122. **de confessis**. With these words begins a noun clause dependent on **censeo** above: 'I move, since . . . , that . . .'. **confessis**, 'persons who have confessed'.

l. 122. **manifestis**, 'persons caught in the perpetration (of)'.

l. 123. **more maiorum**, 'according to the custom of our ancestors', **more** being abl. of manner. The phrase is a common one.

l. 123. **supplicium sumundum (esse)**, 'that punishment should be inflicted'. With such a rendering the preposition **de** will naturally be translated 'on'. The literal meaning is 'should be exacted from'. The word **supplicium** is particu-

larly used of capital punishment. **Sumundum** (i.e. **sumendum**) is the gerundive expressing obligation.

l. 125. **senatus**, genitive.

l. 126. **ad caelum ferunt**. The English idiom is nearly the same: 'laud to the skies'.

l. 126. **alii alios**, etc., 'some chiding, call others fearful'. Say 'reproach one another with timidity'.

l. 128. **senati**, irregular genitive of **senatus**. The regular form occurs above.

l. 129. **mihi**. The dative goes with **libuit**.

l. 131. **praeclara facinora**. These words, according to English ideas, are misplaced. Take them with **multa**, which is the object of **legenti** and (repeated) of **audienti**.

l. 132. **sustinuisset**, subjunctive in indirect question.

l. 134. **contendisse**. The subject of this infinitive must be supplied. It is **eum** (= **populum Romanum**).

l. 135. **gesta**, i.e. **gesta esse**, in acc. and infin. construction with **bella** as subject. **ad hoc**, 'in addition to this', 'moreover'.

l. 136. **toleravisse**. See note on **contendisse** above.

l. 136. **facundia**, **gloria**, are abls. of respect, 'in eloquence', etc.

l. 137. **Ac mihi multa agitant**, 'and to me pondering many things': say 'reflecting at length'.

l. 139. **eoque factum (esse) uti**, 'and that was the reason why', *lit.*, 'and owing-to-this it happened that'. **eo** is abl. of cause.

l. 143. **ac sicuti effeta parente**, 'and just as when a mother is past child-bearing'. **effeta parente** is ablative absolute and means literally 'the mother being exhausted with child-bearing'.

l. 144. **multis tempestatibus**, 'over a long period'. There seems no particular reason for the use of the plural here. The ablative is one of time, similar to **novem diebus**, 'within nine days', and **memoria mea** below.

l. 144. **haud** goes with **quisquam**, and the two words are equivalent to **nemo**.

l. 144. **Romae**, locative.

l. 145. **virtute**, probably abl. of respect 'in the qualities of manhood'.

l. 145. **memoria mea**, 'within my own recollection'.

l. 145. **ingenti virtute, divorsis moribus**, 'of great distinction, (but) opposite character'. Ablative phrases consisting of noun and adjective are thus regularly used to describe, and the use of the case is called the ablative of description. Notice that Latin puts no word between the two phrases to draw attention to their opposition.

l. 146. **fuere**, 'there have been'.

l. 147. **Quos**. Romans liked to begin fresh sentences with relative pronouns. We prefer personals or demonstratives 'these (men)'.

l. 147. **res**, 'my subject'.

l. 148. **praeterire non fuit consilium**, 'it was not my intention to pass over (them)'.

l. 148. **quin aperirem**. Following a negative, a clause with **quin**+subjunctive answers to the English 'without'+verbal noun in -ing.

l. 149. **quantum ingenio possum**, '(as much) as I can with my talent,' i.e. 'so far as my powers permit'.

l. 149. **Igitur**. In most Latin writers this word does not begin a sentence but stands second. The meaning here is not quite the usual 'therefore'; it is more akin to 'well, then', and modifies some such unexpressed thought as 'since I have resolved not to pass them over in silence'.

l. 150. **eis**. The construction is 'to them there were', etc. But it is more in the English manner to proceed as if we had **eorum**: 'their birth . . . were almost equal'.

l. 150. **aequalia**, neuter plural complement, the three subjects of **fuere** being singular and not all of one gender.

l. 151. **alia alii**. **alia** agrees with **gloria**, **alii** is dative sin-

gular, and should properly be **alteri**, as only two persons are being compared. **alii** is substituted to be in harmony with **alia**: 'but (there) was one glory to the one, another to the other'. Say 'but of different kinds'.

l. 152. **beneficiis**, **munificentia**, **integritate** are all abls. of cause: 'because of . . . '.

l. 153. **Ille** = Caesar.

l. 154. **factus**, i.e. **factus est**.

l. 154. **huic** = **Catoni**.

l. 156. **miseris**, **malis**, datives pl. masc.

l. 159. **in animum induxerat**, 'had schooled himself'. But the two infinitives that follow are in grammar direct objects of **induxerat**: 'had brought toiling (and) going without sleep into his character'.

l. 160. **negotiis** may be either dative or ablative, for both are found with **intentus**.

l. 160. **sua**, acc. pl. neuter, is the object of **neglegere**, 'his own (affairs)'.

l. 160. **neglegere** and **denegare** are historic infinitives, i.e. having the same force as historic tenses of the indicative—the imperfect here. Sallust is extremely fond of the use.

l. 161. **quod dono dignum esset**, 'such as was worthy of a gift'. Say 'worth giving'. **dono** is the usual ablative that accompanies **dignus**, and the subjunctive is generic, which is used in adjectival clauses when the antecedent of the relative pronoun stands for a class or type (**genus**), and not a particular individual or thing. Cf. **ei qui divites sint** = 'the rich' (as a class).

l. 163. **posset** is final subjunctive, and **ubi** has the same force as **ut ibi**.

l. 163. **At Catoni**, etc. In English we should make **Catoni** the subject: 'but Cato aimed at . . . '. The construction is 'to Cato there was a passion for . . . '. **modestiae**, **decoris** and **severitatis** are objective genitives dependent on **studium**.

l. 165. **divitiis**, 'in riches', abl. of respect. **factione**, **virtute**, **pudore**, **abstinentia** are all similar.

l. 168. **quo minus, eo magis**, 'the less . . . the more . . .'. **quo** and **eo** are used like **quanto** and **tanto**, l. 60.

l. 169. **adsequabatur**. The subject is **ea** (= **gloria**).

LIVY

Line 1. **Intranti**. The participle agrees with **ei** understood, referring to Masinissa and governed by the verb **occurrit**: '(Him) entering . . . Sophonisba met'. It is most natural in English to render **intranti** by a clause, 'as he entered'.

l. 1. **Sophoniba**. The usual form of the name in English is Sophonisba.

l. 2. **Hasdrubalis**. The name was borne by a confusing number of notable Carthaginians. This one is sometimes called Hasdrubal Gisco, to distinguish him from, for example, the successor in Spain of Hamilcar Barca, and from the brother of Hannibal.

l. 3. **cum**, the conjunction, 'when'.

l. 3. **armatorum**, the masculine adjective used as a noun, 'of armed men'.

l. 4. **cum**, 'both', **tum**, 'and'. The words often occur in this meaning.

l. 4. **armis, cetero habitu**. The ablatives go closely with **insignem**, 'distinguished'.

l. 4. **conspexisset**. The subject is Sophonisba. The subjunctive is that regularly found when a historic tense follows **cum**.

l. 5. **regem esse**, i.e. **eum esse regem**, acc. and infin. dependent on the participle **rata** (from **reor**).

l. 5. **id quod erat**, *lit.*, 'that which was,' i.e. 'as was indeed the case'.

l. 5. **rata**. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are often used in the meaning of the present.

l. 5. **genibus** is dative governed by **advoluta**.

1. 5. **advoluta**. The passive is here the equivalent of the active and reflexive pronoun object, as it often is: 'casting herself'. To fall at a person's feet and clasp one's arms about the knees was a gesture of supplication. It must have required nice judgment: the emperor Tiberius was once brought down by too hearty a tackle.

1. 6. **omnia quidem ut posses in nobis**. The **ut** clause is the object of **dederunt**: 'the gods . . . have granted that you should be all-powerful over me'. **possum** can be used without a following infinitive in the sense 'am strong'. **omnia** is adverbial accusative of extent modifying **posses**; **quidem** merely emphasizes **omnia**, as a tone of voice suffices to do in English. In **in nobis**, the preposition has literally the not unusual meaning of 'in the case of', and **nobis** is put for the singular **me**, as it often is.

1. 7. **captivae**, dative, governed by **licet**.

1. 8. **apud dominum**, 'in the presence of the arbiter'.

1. 9. **mittere**, 'to utter'.

1. 9. **si genua**, etc. **licet** must be repeated with this clause.

1. 9. **dextram**. **dextra** is often used without **manus** for 'right hand'.

1. 10. **in qua nos fuimus**, 'in which I was' = 'which I enjoyed'. Observe again the use of **nos** for **ego**.

1. 11. **paulo ante**, 'a little while ago', **ante** being an adverb, 'earlier' and **paulo** 'by a little', the ablative of the measure of difference.

1. 12. **quod tibi cum Syphace commune fuit**, 'which was common to you with Syphax', i.e. 'which you shared with Syphax'.

1. 13. **huiusce**, a more emphatic form for **huius**.

1. 13. **qui te accipiant**. Untranslatable into English, because wishes ('may . . .') cannot be made subordinate clauses in our language. Render 'whom I would have receive you'. **accipiant** is an example of the optative ('wish') subjunctive. Cf. **sis felicior patre**, 'may you be more fortunate than your father'.

l. 15. **hanc veniam supplicii des.** This is an indirect petition, with omission of **ut**, dependent on **precor quaesoque**, l. 10: 'to grant this favour to (your) suppliant'.

l. 15. **ut ipse**, etc. The rest of the sentence explains what the favour is that Sophonisba asks and the order for translation is **ut statuas ipse de captiva (id) quod animus (tuus) fert, neque sinas me venire in superbum et crudele arbitrium cuiusquam Romani. statuas**, 'you should decide'. The two clauses are indirect petitions in apposition to **hanc veniam**.

l. 18. **nihil** is nom., complement of **fuissem**.

l. 18. **fuissem**, 'had been', the pluperfect subjunctive in the **si** clause representing as usual an assumption contrary to a past fact. She is *not* merely the wife of an African king but belongs to that continent by right of birth too.

l. 19. **Numidae**, gen. sing., depending on **fidem**. The same applies to **geniti, alienigenae, externi**. **Numidae** and **alienigenae** are masculine words, and refer respectively to Masinissa and Scipio.

l. 19. **mecum**, 'as myself', going closely, as the order shows, with **in eadem Africa**.

l. 19. **geniti**, 'of one bred'.

l. 20. **quid Carthaginiensi**, etc. The order for translation is: **vides quid timendum sit ab Romano Carthaginiensi, quid (timendum sit) filiae Hasdrubalis. timendum** is gerundive, and **sit** subjunctive in indirect question: 'what is to be feared'. **Carthaginiensi** and **filiae** are datives, the case used normally with the gerundive to express 'by'. It is sometimes called the dative of the agent.

l. 22. **Si . . . potes**. The verb understands **me vindicare**.

l. 22. **re**, 'means'.

l. 23. **ut vindices**, indirect petition (best rendered by English infinitive, as usual) dependent on **oro obtestorque**, which are to be taken immediately after the **si . . . potes** clause.

l. 24. **Forma**, supply **eius, fem.**, 'her'.

l. 26. **in id, ne . . . traderetur**, 'to the end (id) that she should

not be delivered up'. The sense would not be altered by the omission of *in id*.

l. 26. *cui*, from the *indefinite* adjective *qui* = 'any'.

l. 26. *exposceret*, and the following *esset*, subjunctives due to *cum*, l. 25.

l. 27. *propius*. The comparative adverb, used here as the complement of *esset*, retains the power of the preposition *prope* to govern an accusative, *blanditias*: 'was nearer to cajolery than to entreaty'.

l. 30. *captus*, i.e. *captus est*.

l. 30. *Data dextra . . . obligandae fidei*, *lit.*, 'His right hand having been given (abl. abs.) for his honour being pledged (dat. of purpose) to that which was sought', i.e. 'Having given her his hand to pledge his honour for the performance of what she asked'. For a similar dative of purpose cf. *comitia censoribus creandis habuit*, 'he held an assembly for the electing of censors'.

l. 32. *quem ad modum*, sometimes written as one word, 'in what way', 'how'.

l. 33. *promissi fidem praestaret*, 'he should make good his word', *lit.*, 'fulfil the pledge of his promise'. *praestaret* is subjunctive in an indirect deliberative question. The direct question, which Masinissa asked himself, was *quem ad modum praestem*, 'how am I to fulfil?'

l. 33. *Quod*. Even at the beginning of a fresh sentence Romans liked to use relative words. In English we must often, as here, substitute 'this' for the literal 'which'.

l. 36. *ne quid relinqueret*, etc.: 'that he might not leave to Laelius or to Scipio himself any liberty to make decisions (against her), who was already wedded to Masinissa, as though against a prisoner.' *quid integri consulendi*, *lit.*, 'anything of undecided to be decided'. *quid* is the neuter of the indefinite pronoun. For the partitive genitive *integri* cf. *ecquid est novi*, 'is there any news?'

l. 38. *nupta foret* (= *nupta esset*). The subjunctive is regular in relative clauses which, instead of merely describing, give

reasons, or purposes, or express any other adverbial meaning. When such clauses give reasons the relative is often preceded by **quippe** or **ut**.

l. 38. **Factis nuptiis** is dative governed by **supervenit**.

l. 39. **improbare se factum**. **se** is the subject, **factum** the object of **improbare**. The construction is acc. and infin. depending on **dissimulavit**.

l. 40. **ut primo etiam**, etc. The order is **ut primo etiam conatus sit mittere eam, detractam lecto geniali, ad Scipionem, cum Syphace et ceteris captivis**. The use of the participle **detractam** is unnatural to English minds however; proceed as if the Latin, following on **conatus sit**, were **detrahere eam lecto geniali et mittere (eam)**, etc. **lecto geniali**, dative dependent on the compound verb **detractam**, expresses 'from'. **conatus sit**, subjunctive in consecutive (i.e. result) clause.

l. 43. **orantis**. Translate as if you had **qui orabat**.

l. 43. **ut arbitrium**, etc. The order is **ut reiceret ad Scipionem arbitrium fortunae (dat.) utrius regum duorum Sophonisba esset accessio**. **reiceret**, subjunctive in indirect petition; **esset**, in indirect deliberative question. The translation of the indirect question is 'to the fortune of which of the two kings Sophonisba should be an addition'. Say 'which of the two kings Sophonisba should follow in their (diverse) fortunes'.

l. 45. **misso Syphace et captivis**. Turn the abl. abs. for convenience into a main clause, **misit Syphacem et captivos**.

l. 46. **regiis**. The **rex** is King Syphax.

l. 46. **adiuvante Masinissa**, abl. abs., 'with Masinissa helping', i.e. 'with the help of Masinissa'.

l. 48. **Rex**, i.e. Syphax.

l. 49. **Movit** has two subjects, **fortuna** and **recordatio**. But perhaps the best way to translate this sentence is to reverse the construction of it, making **Scipionem** subject, turning **movit** into the passive, and making ablatives of **fortuna** and **recordatio**: 'Even (et) Scipio was moved, both (cum) by . . . '.

l. 49. **fortuna pristina viri praesenti fortunae collata**, 'the former fortune of the man compared with his present fortune'.

But to English minds it is the *contrast* of the two fortunes that excites pity. Say 'the comparison of the man's former with his present fortune'. For a further example of this idiom (whereby English abstract noun corresponds to Latin perfect participle) cf. **Caesar interfectus plebem perturbavit**, 'the murder of Caesar dismayed the common people'. **praesenti fortunae** is dative dependent on the compound verb **collata** (from **confero**).

l. 50. **tum** answers to the preceding **cum** and means 'and'.

l. 50. **dextraeque datae**, 'of the pledge given'. Note this common meaning of **dextra**.

l. 51. **publice ac privatim**. We may render 'between their respective states and between them as individuals'.

l. 51. **iuncti**, 'made', **iungo**, not **facio**, is often used for 'make' when the object is such a word as **foedus**, **societas**, **pax**, **amicitia**—things which are made by joining.

l. 52. **Eadem haec**, 'these same (considerations)'.

l. 52. **animum**, 'courage'.

l. 53. Take **quid sibi voluisset** *after* **quaereret**.

l. 54. **qui**, 'seeing that he', a meaning which **qui** often has when followed by subjunctive. Here however the subjunctive mood is required by the fact that the clause is a subordinate clause in indirect speech.

l. 55. **tum ille**. The words that follow must be taken in the order **fatebatur sese peccasse quidem atque insanisse**. Here we see the full meaning of **atque**, which is more than **et**: 'and even'.

l. 57. **tum demum**, 'right at the end', *lit.*, 'then at last'.

l. 58. **exitum**, etc. **eum** comes first, and then **fuisse exitum**, **non principium**, **sui furoris**. **eum**, 'that', means the taking up of arms; it is masculine, to agree, in the Latin manner, with the complement **exitum**.

l. 59. **tum se insanisse**. **tum** is emphatic, and we can only secure that emphasis in English thus: '(it was) then (that) he had been mad'. **tum** is explained by the following **cum**.

l. 61. **acceperit**. Note the change in sequence from historic

(*cepisset*) to primary. It is done to secure greater vividness of expression, just as both languages employ the historic present in narrative. *induerit* and *videat* following are similar.

1. 62. *Illis nuptialibus facibus*. Torches were always carried at Roman weddings. By a figure of speech Syphax says his palace was consumed by those carried at his own marriage to Sophonisba. Livy assumes that Numidian customs are similar to Roman.

1. 63. *furiam pestemque*. This is hendiadys, the figure by which two nouns are put for noun and adjective (or as in other cases for noun and dependent noun in genitive). Say 'that baneful Fury'—he means Sophonisba.

1. 63. *omnibus*. *omnis* here means 'every kind of'.

1. 63. *delenimentis* is abl. of means.

1. 64. *conquiesse* = *conquievisse*.

1. 65. *sibi* goes closely with *induerit*, 'upon him'.

1. 66. *Perdito . . . sibi hoc . . . solatii esse*, 'to him ruined there was this of comfort'. Make 'he' the subject of your translation.

1. 67. *quod* = 'that', and introduces a clause explanatory of *hoc solatii*.

1. 68. *in omnium hominum*, etc. The order for translation is *videat eandem pestem ac furiam transisse in domum ac penates inimicissimi omnium hominum sibi*. *inimicissimi* is used as a noun, 'of the man most hostile'. For *pestem ac furiam* cf. *furiam pestemque* above.

1. 71. *etiam iuventa incautiorem*. Repeat *esse*: '(he was) even more unwary, owing to his youth'. *iuventa* is abl. of cause.

1. 72. *stultius* and *intemperantius* are comparative adverbs.

1. 72. *illum* = *Masinissam*, *se* = *Syphacem*. Both pronouns are subject to *duxisse*, and *eam* is the object.

1. 74. *Haec non hostili*, etc. The order is *cum, cernens amatam apud aemulum, haec dixisset non modo hostili odio sed etiam stimulis amoris*. For the last words, say 'not only

out-of-the-hatred felt-for-an-enemy but also under the stings of love'. **odio** and **stimulis** are ablatives of cause.

1. 77. **Et fidem criminibus**, etc. The subjects of **faciebant** are (i) **raptae nuptiae** and (ii) **tam praeceps festinatio**. But it is best to turn the sentence into the passive and proceed as if the reading were **fides . . . raptis nuptiis . . . tam praecipiti festinatione . . . fiebat**: 'Plausibility was lent to his accusations by the hurried marriage, almost on the field of battle, without consulting or waiting for Laelius, and by a haste so precipitate that, on the very day on which (**eodem die quo**) he saw his fair foe captive, he took her, united (with him) in wedlock and performed the marriage rite at the home of his enemy.' **neque consulto . . . Laelio**, abl. abs. **quo die . . . eodem**. Observe how these words are out of the expected order; the relative **quo** *precedes* the demonstrative **eodem**, and **die** is put with it. **vidisset**, subjunctive by *attraction*. A writer tends to put into that mood a verb, naturally indicative, which intervenes between a conjunction requiring subjunctive and its own verb, as **vidisset** does here between **ut** and **acciperet**.

1. 82. **eo** anticipates the following **quod**, 'owing-to-the-fact that'.

1. 82. **haec**, nom. pl. neut., 'these proceedings'.

1. 83. **quod ipsum**, etc. Scipio could feel no sympathy with the hot-blooded African.

1. 83. **iuvenem**, '(as) a young man'.

1. 84. **volutanti** agrees with **ei** understood, which is itself governed by **supervenerunt**. **volutanti** is best turned by a clause 'as he pondered'.

1. 85. **quos cum**: take **cum** first, and **quos** = **eos**.

1. 85. **ambo**, acc.

1. 87. **frequenti praetorio**, 'the headquarters (being) crowded', abl. abs. In public Scipio had nothing but praise for Masinissa.

1. 87. **abductum**. Proceed as if the reading were **abduxit et**, and compare **nuntium captum interfecerunt**, 'they caught and killed the messenger'.

l. 88. **Aliqua te existimo**, etc. The construction is **existimo te, intuentem aliqua bona in me, et** ('both') **venisse principio ad iungendam amicitiam mecum in Hispania, et postea commisisse te ipsum omnesque spes tuas in fidem meam in Africa**. But the weight of the sentence lies on **intuentem** and the words associated with it, an emphasis that we must retain by some such rendering as the following: 'I think that it was because you saw some good-qualities in me that you both came at the outset to form a friendship with me in Spain and subsequently confided yourself and all your hopes to my protection in Africa.' For the use of **iungo** with such objects as **amicitiam** cf. l. 51.

l. 92. **nulla earum virtus est**, i.e. **earum virtutum est nulla**, 'of those virtues (—the **bona** of the preceding sentence—) there is none'.

l. 93. **visus sim**. The subjunctive seems to have resulted from a change in the author's intention. Probably Livy meant to write **fuerim** = 'I was (in your view)', (the subjunctive being one of virtual **oratio obliqua**), and retained that mood, no longer justified, when he substituted the verb **videor**.

l. 94. **qua**, 'in which', belonging with **gloriatu fuerim**. The latter = **gloriatu sim**, and the subjunctive is probably potential, with the perfect tense replacing, as it not infrequently does, the present: 'I should take pride'.

l. 94. **temperantia** and **continentia** are ablatives similar to **qua** above.

l. 94. **libidinum**, a good example of the objective genitive.

l. 95. **hanc, sc. virtutem**.

l. 96. **te adiecisse velim**, 'I could wish (*potential subj.*) that you had added'. This might have been more normally expressed by **vellem adiecisses**.

l. 97. **Non est, non**, etc. The construction is **periculum nostrae aetatis . . . non est tantum . . . quantum . . . voluptatibus**.

l. 98. **circumfusus**, 'surrounding (us)'.

l. 99. **Qui** = 'he who', as often.

l. 101. **peperit**, from **pario**.

l. 101. **Syphace victo**, abl. abs. Say, 'by the defeat of Syphax'.

l. 102. **Quae** is object of **fecisti**: '(the things) which you have done energetically and bravely' = 'what you have achieved by your energy and bravery.'

l. 103. **cetera**, acc. pl. neut. By 'the rest' is meant those deeds of Masinissa's, particularly his marrying Sophonisba, which Scipio does not class as **strenua** and **fortia**.

l. 104. **me dicente**, 'at my mentioning them'.

l. 105. **auspiciis**, 'under the auspices', as we say. Almost 'in the name'.

l. 108. **Syphacis fuit**, 'was Syphax's', i.e. 'belonged to Syphax'.

l. 108. **et regem coniugemque eius**. The accusatives are the objects of **oporteret**: 'it would behove both the king and his wife to be sent'. Say 'both the king and his wife would have to be sent'.

l. 109. **civis**, fem., referring to Sophonisba, as does **eius** following.

l. 110. The subjunctives **esset**, **videremus**, and **oporteret** are all conditional.

l. 111. **ac senatus populi**que. **oporteret** is the verb of this part of the sentence, too: 'and to the senate and people of Rome must belong (*lit.*, of the senate . . . must *be*) the verdict and decision regarding one (**de ea**) who', etc.

l. 114. **praecipitem** agrees with **eum** understood, which is the object of **egisse**.

l. 114. **dicatur**. The clause has a subjunctive verb because it is not really adjectival, but rather adverbial, giving the *reason why* the fate of Sophonisba must be left to Rome.

l. 115. **deformes** and **corrumpas** below depend on **cave** and strictly would be linked to it by **ne**, which is however often omitted. Begin 'beware lest'. The clauses are indirect petitions.

l. 115. **bona**, 'good qualities'.

l. 115. **tot meritorum**, 'gained by (*lit.*, of) so 'many good services'.

l. 116. **causa culpae** = Sophonisba.

l. 118. **suffusus** *sc. est*, and **obortae** *sc. sunt*. The literal rendering is 'to Masinissa hearing this not only was a blush poured up but tears also rose'. We should say: 'hearing this Masinissa not only blushed but shed tears.'

l. 121. **quantum**, 'as far as', having the meaning, that is, of **tantum quantum**. It is an adverbial accusative of extent.

l. 121. **res**, 'the case'.

l. 121. **sineret**. Subjunctive because the clause is subordinate in indirect speech.

l. 122. **consuleret**, 'would have regard', indirect petition. The verb governs **fidei suae** (dat.). Masinissa has made promises to Sophonisba. He begs Scipio to see that if he must be forsworn it shall be to the least possible extent.

l. 122. **promisisse**, i.e. **se promisisse**, 'for he had promised (he said) . . . '.

l. 125. **cum** is conjunction, not preposition. **quod**, '(a thing) which'.

l. 126. **circumstantibus**. The participle is a substantive, 'those standing around'. It is governed by **ab**, and in turn keeps its verbal character so far as to govern the accusative **tabernaculum**.

l. 127. **aliquantum temporis**, 'somewhat of time', **temporis** being partitive genitive. English idiom would be 'no little time'.

l. 128. **fidum e servis**, 'a trusty (one) out of his slaves', i.e. 'a faithful slave'.

l. 129. **regio more**, abl. of manner, 'according to the custom of kings'.

l. 129. **ad incerta fortunae**, 'against the uncertainties of fortune'. The slave's duty was to have the poison always ready in case his master's fortunes took a hopelessly adverse turn.

l. 130. **et mixtum in poculo ferre**, i.e. **et miscere** (**id = venenum**) **in poculo et ferre**. This is the usual Latin device in preference to having two co-ordinate finite or infinitive verbs.

l. 132. **ei**, fem. = **Sophonibae**.

l. 132. **praestaturum fuisse**, 'would have kept'. This corresponds in indirect narration to the conditional subjunctive **praestitisssem** of direct speech.

l. 132. **quam**, rel. pronoun.

l. 133. **debuerit**. Subordinate clause in indirect speech, with a primary tense put for vividness of effect instead of the historic demanded by strict sequence. Observe what tenses follow—**possint**, **adimant**, **veniat** (primary); **nupta fuisset**, **consuleret** (historic).

l. 133. **quoniam eius arbitrium qui possint adimant**, 'since (those) who had-the-power (to do so) were taking from him the deciding of that (matter)'. **qui possint**, though plural, refers to Scipio. **eius arbitrium** may be paraphrased 'the decision in regard to the keeping of it'. **eius** is neuter.

l. 134. **praestare**, supply **se** as subject, 'he was keeping'.

l. 137. **sibi ipsa consuleret**, 'let her look to herself'. **ipsa** makes **sibi** yet more emphatic. **consulo** + dative = 'take counsel for the interests of'.

l. 137. **Hunc nuntium**, etc. Begin the sentence with **cum** (= 'when'). The word is often put comparatively late in a sentence.

l. 139. **neque ingratum**, 'and a not unwelcome (one)'.

l. 141. **nuntia**, imperative.

l. 141. **morituram fuisse**, cf. note on **praestaturum fuisse** above.

l. 142. **in funere meo**, *lit.*, 'at my funeral', is a picturesque exaggeration. Say 'if I had not become a bride upon the edge of the grave'.

l. 142. **Non locuta est**. A very Latin sentence: 'She did not speak more spiritedly than she fearlessly drained the cup, received, no sign of agitation having been given.' English

might put it thus: 'Her spirited words were matched by the fearlessness with which, taking the cup without a trace of agitation, she drained it down.' There is generous recognition here in Livy's words of the bravery of the queen's end.

TACITUS

Line 1. *hic*, 'such'.

l. 1. *cum . . . incessit*. Note: (i) *cum*, 'when', with the indicative, the usual mood when the *cum* clause follows the main verb and in reality introduces the main idea. Such clauses are called *inverse cum* clauses. (ii) the use of *incedo* with *seditio* as subject; *lit.*, 'mutiny entered into the Pannonian legions'. We prefer to have 'Pannonian legions' as subject and to say 'the Pannonian legions mutinied'.

Pannonia was a Roman province between the Danube and the Alps and corresponded roughly to the modern Carinthia and Western Hungary.

l. 2. *nullis novis causis*, abl. abs., '(there being) no new reasons'.

l. 3. *mutatus princeps*, 'the change of emperor'. Cf. the note on Cicero, l. 82, for the translation of the participle.

l. 4. *ostendebat*, 'held out'.

l. 4. *castris aestivis*, abl. of place where, 'in the . . . '.

l. 5. *simul*. Legions were quartered usually separately, for disciplinary reasons.

l. 5. *praesidente Iunio Blaeso*, abl. abs. Translate, 'under the command of . . . '.

l. 6. *fine . . . auditis*, abl. abs., 'having heard of the end of Augustus and . . . '.

l. 7. *ob iustitium*, 'owing to the public mourning'.

l. 8. *lascivire . . . discordare, praeberere*, etc. Historic infinitives.

l. 9. **pessimi cuiusque**, 'of each worst man', = 'of all the worst men'.

l. 11. **dux olim theatralium operarum**, 'once leader of a theatre claque'. **Percennius** had earned his living by organising a group of applauders (*claqueurs*) at the theatres.

l. 13. **procax . . . doctus**, 'insolent of tongue and trained to stir audiences with favour towards the actors'.

l. 15. **promptis . . . ministris**, abl. abs., 'when other promoters of mutiny were ready', or 'when others too were ready to promote a mutiny'.

l. 17. **in modum servorum**, 'like slaves'.

l. 18. **quando**. This and the following lines to the end of line 29 are in indirect speech.

ausuros, supply **illos esse**, 'when would they have the courage . . .'. The accus. and infinitive, and not the subjunctive is used in this indirect question because it is a rhetorical one.

l. 21. **nec aliud . . . iniretur**, *lit.*, '(there was) no other mitigation (he said) than if military service was entered upon under fixed conditions'.

l. 22. **ut . . . solveretur**. The **ut** clauses contain the conditions of service the legionaries require.

l. 22. **singulos denarios**. The denarius used to be reckoned as equivalent to about 8d. Comparisons between ancient and modern money are difficult, because the value of money always depends on what it can buy, i.e. on the cost of living.

l. 22. **sextus . . . adferret**. Augustus had originally fixed the term of service of a legionary soldier at sixteen years. Difficulties, however, had combined to postpone discharge indefinitely, so that the time-expired men were kept with the colours, but apart from the active legionaries and exempt from some fatigues.

Percennius is now pressing for the limit laid down by the earlier regulation.

l. 23. **ne . . . tenerentur**, 'and that they should not be detained further with the colours'.

l. 24. **isdem in castris**, i.e. when they were discharged.

l. 25. **pecunia**, 'in money'. The discharged legionaries wanted gratuities in cash, not in grants of land, some of which, they complained, was poor in quality.

l. 25. **an**, 'or' introducing an indirect question, which is put in the acc. and infin. form, **praetorias cohortes . . . suscipere**, because it is rhetorical.

The praetorian cohorts had been originally the bodyguard of a general, but, under Augustus, they became the emperor's special bodyguard, were stationed just outside Rome, and later won great power in the making and unmaking of emperors.

l. 27. **penatibus suis**, 'to their homes'; *lit.*, 'to their household gods'.

l. 27 **plus periculorum**, object of **suscipere**, 'did the praetorian cohorts which . . . undergo more perils'.

l. 28. **non . . . excubias**. This sentence in the passive (**urbanas excubias** is the subject of **obtrectari**), would be better in the active in English. 'They did not disparage . . .'. The speaker is being sarcastic.

l. 28. **sibi tamen . . . aspici**. The passive would (again) be best rendered by the English active, 'they, however, gazed from their quarters among uncivilised tribes at the enemy'.

l. 28. **sibi**, dative of the agent, used more widely by Tacitus than by earlier writers who combined it with the gerundive, the perfect participle passive, and adjectives in **-bilis**.

l. 30. **adstrepebat vulgus . . . hi . . . illi . . . exprobrantes**. The subject of **adstrepebat**, **vulgus**, is later divided into **hi**, **illi**, **plurimi**, with which nominatives the participle **exprobrantes** agrees.

l. 32. **eo furoris venere**, 'they came to such a pitch of frenzy'. Note **eo**, adv., and the partitive genitive **furoris** dependent on it.

l. 33. **tres legiones** is the object of **miscere** and the latter is the object of **agitaverint**: 'that they considered confusing the three (separate) legions into one'. The purpose of such a move was, no doubt, to spread the guilt of mutiny over all the legions indiscriminately and thus prevent any one particular legion from being regarded as the leader or cause of it.

l. 34. **depulsi**, *lit.*, 'driven away', i.e. 'frustrated'.

l. 35. **eum honorem**, 'that honour', i.e. of giving its name to the combined legions.

l. 35. **alio vertunt**, 'they turned elsewhere', i.e. 'to other measures'.

l. 36. **una**, adv.

l. 37. **quo . . . foret**. Note **quo** (for **ut**), used to introduce a purpose clause which contains a comparative.

l. 38. **properantibus**. It is best to take this as an abl. abs., 'as they were hurrying (there)'.

l. 38. **Blaesus** is in command of the camp. See l. 6.

l. 40. **leviore . . . desciscitis**, *lit.*, 'with a slighter crime you will slay your commander than you revolt from your emperor'. This condensed expression with the emphasis on **leviore flagitio**, might be rendered: 'it will be a slighter crime if . . .'.

l. 44. **caespes**, sing. for plural.

l. 44. **iamque . . . adcreverat**, 'and had grown chest high'.

l. 45. **pervicacia**, abl. with **victi**, which is nom. pl.

l. 46. **Blaesus . . . ait**, *lit.*, 'Blaesus with much skill of speaking said that not through mutiny nor through tumults were the needs of the soldiers to be brought to Caesar'.

multa . . . arte, abl. of manner.

l. 48. **neque veteres**, 'nor had former (soldiers) made such novel demands . . .'.

l. 48. **imperatoribus**, here means 'commanders'.

l. 49. **a divo Augusto**, 'from Augustus of blessed memory'. The title **divus**, 'divine', is not to be applied too literally, but may be turned as above.

l. 50. **et parum in tempore**, 'too little in season' = 'inopportunist'.

l. 50. **incipientes . . . onerari**, *lit.*, 'were the beginning anxieties of the emperor burdened'; i.e. 'were the anxieties of the emperor at the beginning of his reign increased'.

l. 52. **quae**, neut. acc. pl., 'what', object of **expostulaverint**.

l. 52. **ne . . . victores**, 'not even the victors in the civil wars', i.e. during the period 49-31 B.C. when first there was civil war between Caesar and Pompey, and later between Brutus and Cassius and Antony and Octavian, and finally between the latter pair.

l. 53. **contra . . . disciplinae**, 'contrary to the habit of obedience, and the sacred law of discipline'.

l. 54. **decernerent**, indirect command, 'let them appoint envoys'.

l. 56. **legatione**. Note that **fungor** takes the ablative.

l. 57. **militibus**, dative.

l. 57. **ab sedecim annis**, 'after sixteen years'.

l. 57. **cetera . . . provenissent**, acc. and infin., 'they would give other instructions as soon as the first were successful'.

l. 59. **modicum otium**. Supply **erat**.

l. 59. **superbire**, historic infin.

l. 59. **quod . . . ostenderet**. Note the subjunctive which gives the reason in the minds of the soldiers.

l. 60. **orator publicae causae**, 'pleader of a public cause', i.e. 'in pleading a public cause'.

l. 60. **ostenderet . . . obtinuissent**, 'showed that what they had not got by self-discipline had been extorted (**expressa**) by compulsion'.

l. 64. **ad terrorem ceterorum**, 'to (inspire) terror in the rest', 'for intimidation of the rest', i.e. 'to deter the rest'.

l. 65. **adfici verberibus**, 'to be punished by blows', i.e. 'to be flogged'.

l. 66. **legato . . . parebatur**. Note the impersonal passive **parebatur**. Make **legato** the subject.

l. 66. **optimo quoque manipularium**, 'by all the best of the soldiers'. **optimus quisque**, 'best each' = 'all the best'.

l. 67. **obniti, prensare**, etc., historic infinitives.

trahentibus, dative, dependent on **obniti**, 'they resisted those who-were-dragging (them off)'.

l. 69. **centuriam . . . legionem**, 'the century, cohort and legion to which each belonged'.

While the subject of the historic infinitives is **illi, quisque**, ('each one') is inserted as the subject before **centuriam**.

l. 70. **eadem . . . clamitantes**, the acc. and infin. depends on **clamitantes**, 'shouting that the same (fate) threatened all'.

l. 72. **nihil reliqui faciunt . . . permoverent**, 'they left nothing undone (*lit.*, of remaining) to stir up hate . . . '.

quominus = **quin**, 'but that', a conjunction frequently found in Latin after a negative phrase or sentence.

l. 74. **adcurritur**, impersonal passive. Make **universis** the subject.

l. 75. **rerum capitalium . . . iam miscent**, 'and even associate with themselves men condemned on a capital charge'.

l. 77. **flagrantior . . . duces**. Supply **erat** and **erant**.

l. 77. **seditioni**. Translate as a genitive.

l. 79. **umeris**, 'on the shoulders . . . '.

l. 79. **apud turbatos . . . inquit**. Order for translation: **inquit apud turbatos et intentos quid pararet**, 'said among (men) excited and intent upon what he was planning'.

Note: (i) **inquit**, 'he said', always introduces Direct Speech; (ii) **quid pararet**, indirect question dependent on **intentos**.

For 'among (men) excited,' we might say, 'to his excited audience'.

l. 83. **Quem missum . . . armat**. The subject of **iugulavit** is **Blaesus**.

After translating the sentence literally, try to turn it into the passive and thus retain the Latin order of words. 'When he had been sent to you . . . , he was murdered by . . . '.

l. 87. **sepultura** is ablative, a case which is sometimes found with **invideo**.

l. 88. **cum**, 'when'. **implevero**: note the future-perfect where English prefers the perfect.

l. 89. **dum**, 'provided that', followed, as usual, by the subjunctive.

1. 92. **incendebat haec**, *lit.*, 'he was inflaming these words' = 'he was adding passion to these words by his weeping'.

1. 93. **disiectis quorum per umeros**, 'having scattered (those) on whose shoulders'.

1. 95. **tantum consternationis invidiaeque**, 'so much (of) dismay and hate'.

1. 96. **gladiatores**, object of **vincirent**. Note that **pars . . . pars**, 'some . . . others', though singular grammatically, take a plural verb.

1. 96. **qui . . . erant**, 'who were from the slavery of Blaesus', i.e. 'who were among the slaves of Blaesus'. Latin sometimes uses the abstract ('slavery') where we prefer the concrete, 'slaves'.

1. 97. **ceteram . . . familiam**, 'the rest of his household', i.e. the other slaves and servants who were not gladiators.

Until the time of Nero who forbade the practice, provincial governors maintained troops of gladiators chiefly to give gladiatorial shows and thus make themselves personally popular. All such gladiators would be slaves and maintained as part of the governor's household (**familia**).

1. 99. **Ac ni . . . pernotuisset**. Begin as follows: 'and had it not quickly become known that no body was . . . found.' Then translate the other acc. and infinitives.

1. 100. **adhibitis cruciatibus**, *lit.*, 'tortures having been applied', i.e. 'under torture'.

1. 101. **haud multum . . . aberant**. A careful and literal translation will give the sense immediately. Note that to make the narrative more vivid, Tacitus uses the indicative in the apodosis here, where we would normally expect a subjunctive.

1. 104. **direptae**. Supply **sunt**.

1. 105. **cedo alteram**. **cedo** is an old imperative form which consists of the root **da-** and the particle **-ce**, and means 'here—give' = 'bring here'. The phrase, therefore, means, 'here, another', and the centurion was nicknamed 'here, another' for the reason given in the next sentence.

l. 106. **fracta vite**, 'after he had broken his vine-staff on a soldier's back'.

A legion's discipline and efficiency chiefly depended on the centurions, for they had many duties and responsibilities. The emblem of their office, the vine-staff, emphasised their disciplinary duties.

l. 108. **uno retento Clemente Iulio**, 'one (only) being detained, Clemens Julius'.

l. 108. **perferendis . . . mandatis**, 'for delivering the soldiers' demands'.

l. 109. **habebatur idoneus**, 'was considered suitable . . . '.

l. 110. **quin**, 'moreover'.

l. 111. **ferrum parabant**, 'were preparing the sword' = 'were preparing to fight'.

l. 112. **illa**, 'the former'.

l. 112. **morti deprecatur**, 'demands for death'. **morti**, dative of work contemplated.

l. 113. **ni . . . interiecisset**, 'had not the troops of the 9th interposed entreaties and against (them) rejecting (their entreaties) threats'. For 'against them . . .', we might say, 'when they rejected them'.

It will be noted that the apparent apodosis of this conditional clause, **ferrum parabant**, is in the indicative, although for it to be true to type, the pluperfect subjunctive might have been expected. In reality, however, the true apodosis has to be supplied as follows, 'they were preparing to fight, and (would have fought) had not' etc.

l. 115. **haec audita**, 'this heard' = 'this news' = 'news of this'.

l. 115. **quamquam . . . Tiberium**, 'Tiberius although (he was) reserved and concealed especially all the gloomiest news'.

l. 118. **nullis . . . mandatis**, abl. abs. Translate after the following phrase, **ex re consulturum**.

l. 119. **ex re consulturum**. The future participle is in agreement with **Drusum filium** and is used to express *purpose*. **ex re**, 'in accordance with the situation'.

l. 120. **delecto milite**, 'with picked soldiery', abl. of the instrument, the collective noun **milite** being regarded as the instrument rather than the agent.

l. 120. **supra solitum**, 'beyond (what was) customary'.

l. 120. **firmatae**, Supply **sunt**.

l. 122. **firmant**. The subject 'they' can be easily supplied from the context. The reference is to the legions in the camp who wish to prevent the main force with Drusus from entering it.

l. 122. **certis . . . locis**, 'at fixed points in the camp', local ablative without **in**, a construction which Tacitus has adopted from verse usage.

l. 125. **quotiens . . . rettulerant**, 'as often as they turned their eyes . . .'. Note the pluperfect indicative, a construction which is normally found after **cum** = 'whenever'.

l. 126. **strepere . . . trepidare**, historic infinitives

l. 127. **murmur incertum**, etc. Supply **erat**, 'there was', as the verb.

l. 128. **diversis . . . terrebantque**, *lit.*, 'under contrary gusts of feeling they were afraid and terrified (others)', i.e. 'with conflicting emotions, they at one moment displayed fear, at the next inspired it'.

l. 130. **in quis** = **in quibus**.

l. 131. **ipsi**, 'to himself', i.e. 'to Tiberius'.

l. 132. **toleravisset**. Why subjunctive?

l. 132. **requiesset** = **requievisset**. The pluperfect subjunctive represents an original future-perfect in direct speech.

l. 133. **acturum**. Supply **se** and **esse**, 'he would discuss'.

l. 135. **cetera . . . par esset**, *lit.*, 'the rest was to be kept for the senate which it was not right (**neque par esset**) to be considered (as) having no part in either making concessions (**gratiae**) or in taking a firm stand (**severitatis**)'. Translate: 'which should not be considered as having no power to make . . .'.

l. 138. **mandata**, 'that instructions had been given to the centurion Clemens (for him) to deliver'. **perferret**, final (purpose) subjunctive.

l. 140. **a**, 'after'.

l. 142. **ad ea**, 'in reply to this'.

l. 143. **cur venisset**, etc. From here, the passage slips into indirect speech and remains so until the end of the chapter. 'Why had he come?' etc.

l. 144. **neque augendis . . . laboribus**. Note the dative of work contemplated, frequent in Tacitus' use of the gerundive.

l. 145. **denique . . . licentia**, abl. abs., *lit.*, 'in a word (there being) no power of doing good', i.e. 'when he had no freedom to give them benefits'.

l. 146. **verbera . . .**, 'the right to flog and execute was given to all'. *lit.*, 'blows and death were entrusted to all'.

This statement is an exaggeration, for capital punishment could be inflicted **only** a soldier only by the governor of a province.

l. 148. **solitum**. Supply **esse**, 'Tiberius had been accustomed'.

l. 148. **eisdem . . . rettulisse**. 'Drusus had repeated the same tricks'.

l. 149. **Nunquamne . . . venturos**, 'would no one except the sons of the (reigning) house ever come to them?'. The speaker merely asks contemptuously, would their rulers never visit them?

l. 150. **Novum id plane**, 'it was strange indeed that the emperor referred only the soldier's privileges to the senate'.

The whole sentence is ironical because, in reality, the senate had no authority in military affairs. Thus it was obvious to the soldiers that any suggestion of referring any such problem to the senate was a convenient method for an emperor of avoiding responsibility.

l. 151. **Eundem . . . consulendum**, 'the senate, too (**eundem**), was to be consulted, whenever . . . '.

'was to be consulted' = 'should be consulted'.

l. 153. **an**, 'or'.

l. 153. **sub**, 'in the power of'.

l. 153. **poenas** . . . Insert 'but' before **poenas**. **sine arbitro**, 'without a controller' = 'uncontrolled'.

l. 155. **Noctem** . . . **lenivit**. This sentence would be better in the passive in English.

l. 156. **visa**, supply **est**.

l. 157. **omen**, '(as) an omen'. **praesentium**, 'of their present (position)'.

l. 159. **prospereque cessura**. Supply the verb 'believed' before this acc and infin. *Lit.*, '(things) would turn out successfully the way they were proceeding'.

l. 161. **prout** . . . **obscuriorve**, 'according as (the moon was) brighter or more darkened'.

l. 163. **postquam**, 'when'.

l. 163. **creditum** (est), impersonal passive, 'and it was believed'.

l. 164. **conditam**. Supply **lunam** as the subject and **esse** with **conditam**.

l. 164. **ut** . . . **mentes**, *lit.*, 'as minds once dismayed are prone to superstition'. Say, 'with that proneness to superstition characteristic of minds once dismayed'.

l. 167. **Utendum** . . . **ratus**. Order for translation: **Caesar** (i.e. **Drusus**) **ratus utendum** (esse) **ea inclinatione et vertenda** (ea) **quae casus obtulerat in sapientiam**.

l. 168. **in sapientiam**, 'to prudent use'.

l. 169. **et si** . . . **in vulgus**, *lit.*, 'and if (any) others by their good qualities (were) popular with the common soldiers'.

This clause is the second subject of **accitur**, and can be rendered, 'and all others who . . . '.

l. 171. **se inserunt**, 'insinuated themselves among . . . '.

l. 172. **metum**, 'threats'.

l. 177. **Quin potius** . . . **sumus**, *lit.*, 'why are we not rather first for repentance, as (we were) last for guilt?'.

l. 179. **tarda . . . expostulantur.** The subject of **sunt** is the clause **quae . . . expostulantur**, 'demands made in common'.

l. 180. **privatam**, 'on your own account'. The word is in strong contrast with the phrase **in commune** above.

l. 180. **mereare**, 'you may deserve'. Similarly **recipias**. Both subjunctives are potential.

l. 181. **commotis . . . suspectis.** Translate by a 'when' clause.

l. 181. **inter se suspectis**, 'and had become mutually suspicious'.

l. 185. **suas in sedes**, 'to their proper places'.

Succeeding chapters describe how Drusus agrees to their sending a second deputation to Tiberius and then breaks the revolt completely by executing first Vibulenus and Percennius and then the chief mutineers. As all now seems to be quiet in the district, he returns to Rome.

PLINY

I

Line 1. **facta dictaque**, etc., *lit.*, 'that the deeds and words of distinguished men and women (are), some more famous, others greater'. The meaning is 'that of the deeds and words of distinguished men and women the best known are not always the greatest'.

l. 3. **hesterno Fanniae sermone**, 'by a conversation I had yesterday with Fannia'.

l. 4. **haec**, supply **est**.

l. 4. **quae marito**, etc., 'who was to her husband both a comfort and example of death', or as we might say, 'who not only consoled her husband in the hour of death, but also showed him how to die'.

l. 5. **multa**, 'many deeds'.

l. 6. **hoc**, abl. of comparison. By 'this' Pliny means the occasion referred to immediately before.

l. 6. **quae** is acc., subject to **fore** in the acc. and infin. construction.

l. 11. **filius decessit**. After these words we should expect **puer** or **iuvenis** in apposition to **filius**.

l. 11. **eximia pulchritudine**, the abl. of description, for which the English equivalent is a phrase beginning with 'of'. **pari verecundia** is in the same construction. **pari**, i.e. he was no less modest than handsome.

l. 15. **intraret**. **quotiens** takes indicative in the writers of the best period.

l. 15. **vivere filium**. Reverse these; the construction is acc. and infin. dependent on **simulabat**.

l. 16. **interroganti** agrees with **ei** (= **marito**) understood. But we should say 'to his frequent questions'.

l. 17. **quid ageret puer**, not 'what' but 'how the boy did'.

l. 19. **egrediebatur**, imperfect because it happened each time she was questioned: 'she would go out'.

l. 20. **satiata**, sc. **flendo**, 'when she had wept till she could weep no more'.

l. 21. **reliquisset**: subjunctive in a clause making an unreal comparison: 'as if she had left'—but she had not.

l. 22. **Praeclarum**, sc. **erat**.

l. 22. **illud eiusdem**, 'that (behaviour) of the same woman'. But if we begin, 'It was noble indeed of her', the following five infinitives can be rendered literally.

l. 22. **ferrum stringere**. Her husband, Paetus, was arrested for his part in a rising against the Emperor Claudius.

l. 25. **facienti** and **dicenti** agree with **ei** (= **Arriae**) understood: 'to her doing and saying those things . . .'. But English would prefer to say 'when she was doing . . ., she had fame . . .'.

l. 26. **quo**, abl. of cause, 'on which account' (= 'therefore').

l. 27. **maius**, 'a greater thing'.

l. 29. **matrem agere**, exactly as we say, 'to play the mother', 'act the mother's part'.

l. 30. **Scribonianus**. His revolt occurred in A.D. 42.

l. 30. **Illyrico**. This Roman province lay across the Adriatic from Italy.

l. 30. **Claudius**. The fourth Roman emperor, who reigned from A.D. 41-54.

l. 31. **in partibus**, *sc. eius*.

l. 34. **daturi**, fut. partic., 'going to give'.

ll. 35,36. **capiat**, **vestiatur**, **calcietur** are all *final* subjunctives, expressing purpose. Such clauses are very frequently introduced by relative pronouns, instead of by **ut**. Proceed as if the Latin here were **ut e manu eorum . . . ab eis . . . ab eis**.

l. 36. **omnia**, i.e. the services just specified.

l. 38. **minimo**, *sc. navigio*.

l. 38. **Eadem**, *lit.*, 'the same woman'. We should say, 'Moreover . . . she . . . '.

l. 40. **indiciu**m, i.e. against her husband's fellow conspirators.

l. 40. **audiam** is probably subjunctive (deliberative): 'am I to listen to? '.

l. 40. **cuius in gremio**, etc. To secure the emphasis on **vivis** which the Latin gives by the prominence of its position we can say, 'who go on living, although Scribonianus was slain in your arms'. A loyal wife, in Arria's view, should have sought a voluntary death after the loss of her husband in such circumstances.

l. 45. **Vis**, from **volo**.

l. 46. **si mihi pereundum fuerit**. **fuerit** is future perfect, and **pereundum** the nom. sg. neut. of the gerundive, used impersonally to express obligation. *Lit.*, 'if it shall have been for me necessary to die'. English prefers the present, 'if I have to die'.

l. 47. **tantaque concordia**, abl. of manner, 'and in such great harmony'.

l. 47. **vixerit**, fut. perf., where our language would probably use the perfect.

l. 49. **suorum** is used as a noun, 'of her own (people, *or* household)'. After this word supply **et**. Pliny, as in the sentence above, **fuerat Paetus . . . Romam trahebatur**, sometimes leaves the two halves of a compound sentence unconnected.

l. 50. **sensit**. The suppressed direct object is **hoc**.

l. 50. **Nihil agitis**, a formula = 'you are wasting your time'.

l. 50. **efficere ut male moriar**, *lit.*, 'cause that I should die badly'. Say 'cause me to die painfully'.

l. 51. **ne moriar non potestis (efficere)**, *lit.*, 'you cannot cause that I should not die', i.e. 'you cannot prevent my dying'.

l. 52. **cathedra**, abl.

l. 53. **ingenti impetu**, abl. of manner, 'with . . . '.

l. 53. **Dixeram**. English would employ a perfect, not a pluperfect, here.

l. 54. **inventuram me**, i.e. **me inventuram esse**.

l. 55. **negassetis**. Observe two things about this: (i) it is a 'syncopated' form, standing for **negavissetis**; (ii) the mood is due to the fact that it is the verb of a subordinate clause in indirect speech.

l. 56. **Videnturne**, put for **nonne videntur**.

l. 56. **haec**, i.e. the three sayings of Arria recorded above.

l. 56. **illo**, abl. of comparison, 'than the famous'. **ille**, meaning 'that (well known)' is common.

l. 57. **ad quod per haec perventum est**, *lit.*, 'to which it was come through these', i.e. 'to which they led up'. **perventum est** is an example of the impersonal passive construction. Cf. **hieme ab antiquis non navigabatur**, 'in winter no sailing was done by the ancients'.

l. 57. **cum interim**, etc. **cum** seems here to have the sense of 'although', in which meaning it usually takes the subjunctive. **illud** and **haec** are the direct objects of **circumfert**; its subjects are **ingens fama** and **nulla (fama)**.

l. 59. **Unde**. We do not care as a rule to begin sentences with relative words. Here for example English would say not 'from which' but 'from this'.

l. 59. **quod**=**id quod**, 'what'.

l. 59. **alia esse clariora**, etc. See the note on the opening sentence of this selection.

II

Pliny writes to a friend who is disquieted by the disappearance of a man of rank. Pliny can give little comfort, though he will do what he can. The incident reminds him of another sinister vanishing of the same kind, and he fears foul play.

l. 61. **equitem**. The 'knights' of Rome formed the class immediately below the senatorial. They were wealthy but not, by birth, of the aristocracy.

l. 62. **Ocriculum**, a small town in Umbria, upon the Via Flaminia, a great road running N.E. from Rome to Ariminum on the Adriatic coast. Before **Ocriculum** take **usque**.

l. 65. **in aliqua inquisitionis vestigia inducat**, 'and lead us on to some traces of the investigation', i.e. 'give us some indications that will help us in the enquiry'. Observe how in this first sentence Pliny repeats the gist of his correspondent's own letter. This is evidence that Pliny wrote with subsequent publication in mind, for he plainly desired his own letters to be fully comprehensible without those of the various other parties to the correspondence.

l. 66. **ne frustra**, supply **veniat**.

l. 66. **tale nescio quid**, 'some such thing', *lit.*, 'such a thing. I know not what'.

l. 67. **quale**, 'as'. It is nominative, subject to **acciderit** (perf. subj.) understood. The antecedent **tale** is accusative, subject to the infinitive **accidisse**.

l. 68. **ordinem**, 'a commission' in the army, probably as centurion.

l. 69. **proficiscenti** agrees with **ei** understood: 'and to him setting out'. Say 'at his departure'.

l. 70. **nummum** is gen. pl., alternative form for **nummorum**. **nummus** = **sestertius**, a small Roman coin, called in English 'a sesterce'.

l. 70. **ad instruendum**, etc. The normal order would be **ad se instruendum et ornandum**, *lit.*, 'for himself being equipped and fitted out', i.e. 'to equip and fit himself out'. The two verb forms, which mean nearly the same thing, are acc. sg. masc. of the gerundive, agreeing with **se**. For another phrase similarly expressing purpose, cf. **ad naves reficiendas**, 'for repairing the ships'.

l. 72. **a suis**, supply some such word as **servis**, and do the same in the case of **cum suis** following.

l. 73. **dubium**, *sc. est*. Begin the sentence with these words: 'it is doubtful whether'.

l. 75. **Utinam** is often used to distinguish the optative ('wish') subjunctive from other uses of the mood. Thus **utinam ne experiamur** is 'may we not experience'.

l. 75. **in Robusto**, 'in the (case of) Robustus'. This use of **in** is common.

l. 76. **arcessamus**, the hortative subjunctive, 'let us . . .', **demus** following is the same use.

l. 76. **tuis**, *sc. precibus*.

l. 78. **faveant** is optative subjunctive again, like **experiamur** above. With the verb supply **ei** (dat.), referring to the young son of the missing man.

l. 79. **ipsum**, '(the man) himself'—his father.

l. 80. **fuisset**, subjunctive in indirect question.

III

Pliny has been invited to the Emperor's country house as a counsellor. He gives an account of three law cases which are heard on successive days, and of the days of relaxation which follow. He ends with a description of building operations designed to form an artificial harbour near the imperial villa.

l. 81. **Caesare nostro**, i.e. Trajan, who reigned A.D. 98-117.

l. 81. **Centum Cellas**. This place, on the Italian west coast north of Rome is now called Civita Vecchia, 'Old Town'.

l. 82. **hoc loco nomen**. We should expect **loci**. The literal meaning is 'to the place this (is) the name'.

l. 83. **Quid**, nom. to a missing verb, perhaps **esse potest**.

l. 83. **quam**. Take **inspicere** next after this.

l. 83. **principis**. One of the titles of the Roman Caesars.

l. 86. **quae** = 'such as', as the following generic subjunctive **experirentur** shows.

l. 88. **innoxie popularis**. Under the empire the winning of popular favour was normally suspect.

l. 89. **Inde**, *sc. erat*, *lit.*, 'thence was . . .'. We might begin, 'The consequence was'.

l. 89. **dissimillimis**, 'those most unlike(him)'.

l. 89. **delator**. The laying of information, often false, against prominent men was a sinister feature of Roman life under the Caesars.

l. 89. **immissus**, *sc. est*.

l. 91. **rea**, 'upon a charge'. The word really means 'a (female) defendant'.

l. 92. **Nupta haec**. Reverse these: 'She, married . . .'.

l. 92. **honores petituto**, '(who was) intending-to-see advancement'. Under the republic **honores** meant the various elective offices of state. These offices, now largely honorary, were still sought after, and aspirants to the most junior of them, the quaestorship, had to serve a prior term in the army. It is this qualifying service that Gallitta's husband is doing.

l. 93. **centurionis amore**. We might say 'by having an affair with a centurion'. This made the offence not merely a moral one, violating the Julian law against such misdemeanours, but was no doubt regarded by the emperor, who was commander-in-chief of the army, as 'prejudicial to good order and military discipline', since a military tribune was a centurion's superior officer.

l. 94. **legato consulari**, i.e. the wronged husband, a colonel, had reported the matter to his general, and the latter in turn to the C.-in-C. The adjective **consulari** means that the **legatus** had previously served as consul.

l. 96. **Supererat crimini**, *lit.*, 'there was left over to the crime'. Say 'the crime still required . . . '.

l. 97. **quod nisi**, etc., 'which could not be unless of two', i.e. 'which was bound to involve two persons'.

l. 97. **reliqua pars ultionis**. Only the guilty *man* had suffered hitherto.

l. 98. **sed maritum**, etc. This sentence will go much more easily into English if its construction is reversed, **maritum** becoming **maritus** (subject), the verb going into the passive (**retardabatur**) and the original subject **amor** being changed to **amore** (instrumental ablative).

l. 100. **post delatum adulterium**, *lit.*, 'after the adultery having been denounced', the common Latin way of saying 'after the denunciation of the adultery'. It may be seen from this that a participle does work for which English employs an abstract noun. Cf. **pons interruptus militem perterrit**, 'the destruction of the bridge terrified the soldiery'.

l. 103. **illam damnari** is acc. and infin., subject to **erat**, **necesse** the complement: 'that she should be condemned . . . was essential.'

l. 103. **etiam invito accusatore**. The last two words are in the abl. abs. construction: 'even against the wishes of her accuser.'

l. 104. **damnata**, *sc. est*.

l. 104. **Iuliae legis**. The Julian law of Augustus (18 B.C.) was designed to check immorality. The penalties referred to were, loss of one half of her dowry, and of one third of her property; and banishment to an island.

l. 105. **Caesar et nomen**, etc. Trajan was careful to show in his judgment that the case had only come before him personally as one tending to destroy the military discipline for which, as commander-in-chief, he was responsible.

l. 109. **codicilli**. This word is nom. pl., in apposition to **cognitio**. The construction is strained, but quite intelligible: '... a case was introduced, ..., the will ...'. With greater naturalness Pliny might have written **de codicillis**.

l. 110. **dicebantur**. Supply as subject **qui** (= **codicilli**) from the preceding **quos**. **esse** needs to be repeated with this clause.

l. 111. **Substituebantur crimini**, 'were laid under the charge', i.e. 'were accused'.

l. 112. **libertus et procurator**. The Emperors made great use of freedmen as administrative lieutenants, principally because they found it safe to entrust with wide power men who, because of their lowly origin, could not possibly set themselves up as rivals to their employers. Procurators were provincial officials, responsible to the emperor for the collection of taxes.

l. 113. **cum Caesar esset in Dacia**. This trans-Danubian province, corresponding roughly to the modern Roumania, was conquered by Trajan.

l. 116. **quidam**, nom. pl., 'some'; **ex heredibus** depends on it.

l. 116. **reverentia**, abl. of cause, 'out of respect'. It goes closely with **quasi**, which suggests that the reason given was a pretended one.

l. 116. **Eurythmi**, 'for Eurythmus'. Note that in Latin a noun made to depend upon another noun is put in the genitive case. The use of the genitive here is objective.

l. 117. **Nec ille Polyclitus**, etc. Polyclitus was a freedman of Nero's who abused the powers he held under that tyrant. Supply the verbs **est** and **sum**.

l. 119. **cuius tempore exacto**, 'the period of which having expired'. *Literally* **exacto** = 'having been completed' and the construction is ablative absolute.

l. 120. **auditurus**: the future participle, as it not infrequently does, expresses purpose, 'to hear (the case)'.

l. 121. **postularunt**, syncopated form for **postulaverunt**.

l. 123. **desistere** should properly be **ut desisterent**.

l. 126. **suspicionibus relinqui reos**, 'that the defendants would be (*lit.*, were) left under (*lit.*, to) suspicion'.

l. 126. **nisi audirentur**. The words form a subordinate clause in indirect speech, hence the subjunctive mood.

l. 127. **an**, which usually introduces the second half of an alternative question, is here employed where **num**, 'whether', would be more normal.

l. 127. **isti**, 'your friends', *lit.*, 'those (men) of yours'—the lawyer's clients, Senecio and Eurythmus.

l. 129. The Greek word, *epistesate*, means 'advise (me)'.

l. 129. **debeamus**, subjunctive in indirect question. The plural is royal, or rather imperial.

l. 129. **isti**, 'those fellows', the two heirs who have appeared in court.

l. 130. **quod**, 'that'. The subjunctive shows that the words are those which the heirs hope to be able to use: ' (we suffered injustice) because we were not allowed . . . '. A partial quotation of this kind is called 'virtual oratio obliqua'.

l. 131. **denuntiari heredibus omnibus**, ' (it) to be proclaimed to all the heirs,' i.e. 'all the heirs to be ordered'. The following subjunctives **agerent** and **approbarent** are indirect commands, the **ut** which normally introduces such clauses being here omitted. They are best rendered by the English infinitive.

l. 132. **singuli**. Turn by an adverb, 'severally', 'individually'. In grammar it is the nom. of an adjective, agreeing with the understood subject of **approbarent**.

l. 133. **non agendi**. English prefers to say 'for not prosecuting'.

l. 133. **de calumnia pronuntiaturum** = 'would hold them guilty of bringing a groundless charge', *lit.*, 'would make a pronouncement about calumny'. The emperor appears to have thought that the charge of forging the will, whether genuinely believed in or not, was aimed ultimately at himself.

l. 135. **dies**, supply **fuerint**, subjunctive in indirect question.

l. 137. **erat modica**, the subject is **ea** understood = **cena**.

l. 137. **si principem cogitares**, 'considering that the emperor gave it'. The **si** clause modifies a suppressed apodosis, **modica**

videretur, and itself requires to be expanded with some such words as **hospitem esse**: 'it would have seemed modest, if you had reflected that the host was emperor'.

l. 138. ἀκροάματα (*acroamata*) = 'entertainments', i.e. music, recitations, etc., given in the course of the dinner party.

l. 142. **consilii**, an objective genitive, 'the regard *shown for* the council'.

l. 143. **periucundus fuit** has five subjects. The neatest way to turn this sentence is, 'But to me, no less pleasing than . . . was the place itself'.

l. 145. **cum maxime**, usually **nunc cum maxime**, 'at the present moment'.

l. 147. **insula adsurgit**. The island is artificial, and **adsurgit** is a true present, 'is rising'.

l. 148. **quae** introduces an adverbial, not an adjectival clause, as the subjunctive mood shows. It is final, and best rendered by the English infinitive, 'to break'.

l. 148. **obiacens**, 'lying in its path'; it agrees with **quae**. We should say here 'by lying in its path', as if the Latin were **obiacendo**.

l. 149. **ab utroque latere**. In a number of place phrases **a** (**ab**) does not mean 'from', but 'at', 'in' or 'on'. Cf. **a fronte**, **a dextra**.

l. 150. **visenda**, gerundive, 'worthy to be inspected', 'deserving of inspection'.

l. 151. **contra**, etc. 'Parallel (to the shore), these, cast down one on top of the other, remain (in position) by their own weight, and are being gradually built up in a sort of rampart, as it were.' A number of points are to be noticed here. **alia** is neut. pl., *lit.*, 'some upon others': **quidam** is often used, as here, to apologise for a boldly chosen word; **velut** is doing the same work. Pliny thus doubly seeks to forestall criticism of his use of the word **agger** in an unusual connection.

l. 154. **impactos fluctus**, 'the dashed-on waves', i.e. 'the waves that break upon it'.

- l. 155. **Vastus illic**, etc. The verb **est** must be supplied twice.
- l. 156. **procedente tempore**, 'with time going on', abl. abs. Say 'in course of time'.
- l. 157. **imitentur**. Final subjunctive. For this compare the note on **quae frangat** above, l. 148.
- l. 158. **auctoris**, i.e. Trajan.
- l. 158. **vel maxime**. **vel** intensifies the superlative: 'in the very highest degree'.
- l. 159. The phrase **per longissimum spatium** goes closely with **importuosum**: 'a coast (that is) harbourless for a very long distance'.

SUETONIUS: THE DEATH AND FUNERAL OF JULIUS CAESAR

Line 1. **ob haec simul**, 'both for these (reasons)'. The **haec** refers to the portents and signs which Suetonius has described in the previous lines.

l. 2. **cunctatus**, 'having hesitated'. Translate as 'he hesitated', and put a 'but' before **tandem**.

l. 2. **an**, 'whether'.

l. 3. **agere**. This infinitive depends on **proposuerat**.

l. 3. **Decimo Bruto adhortante**, 'Decimus Brutus urging (him)', i.e. 'as Decimus Brutus urged him'. This Brutus had served under Caesar in Gaul and during the period of the civil wars, but had now joined the conspirators.

l. 4. **ne . . . destitueret**, *lit.*, 'not to fail (them) crowded and waiting for him some time', i.e. 'not to fail a crowded House which had been . . . '.

l. 5. **quinta fere hora**, 'about the fifth hour'. As the Romans divided the available daylight into twelve hours, 'the fifth hour' on March 15th would be about 11 a.m.

l. 5. **libellum . . . porrectum . . . commiscuit**, *lit.*, 'he put the note having been handed (to him)'. Begin this sentence by 'when a note . . . was handed (to him) by . . . '.

l. 7. **quasi . . .**, 'as if he intended to read them soon'. Note the future participle active and the translation.

l. 9. **cum**, 'since'. **litare**, 'to obtain favourable omens'. Before entering upon any important business whether public or private, the Romans always tried to find out whether the gods favoured their action by some form of divination, either by watching the flight of birds or by inspecting the entrails of sacrificed animals or birds.

l. 9. **spreta religione**, 'religious feeling scorned', i.e. 'scorning religious feeling'.

l. 10. **Spurinna** was the soothsayer who warned Caesar to beware the Ides of March (15th).

l. 10. **ut falsum arguens**, 'denouncing (him) as false'.

l. 11. **quod . . . adessent**. Note the subjunctive in this causal clause, used here because Suetonius is giving an alleged reason, the reason of Caesar, 'because, as he said, the Ides of March were here . . . '.

l. 12. **quanquam . . . praeterisse**, 'and yet he (Spurinna) said' (*diceret*). Writers after Cicero occasionally use **quanquam** with the subjunctive. Ciceronian use demands the indicative.

l. 14. **assidentem**, '(him) sitting down', object of **circumsteterunt**. Begin, 'as he sat down'.

l. 14. **specie officii**, 'with pretence of duty', i.e. 'as though to pay him their respects'.

l. 15. **primas partes**, 'the leading role'.

l. 16. **quasi . . . rogaturus**. Cf. the note on l. 7 above.

l. 17. **renuenti . . . differenti**, dative of the present participle in agreement with **ei** understood. The dative is that of the person interested. Translate, however, by a clause, 'as Caesar refused and put him off . . . he seized his toga . . . '.

l. 18. **clamantem . . . vulnerat**. **clamantem** agrees with **eum**

understood, which is the object of **vulnerat**, and refers to Caesar. **aversum**, 'turned away', is also in agreement with the object. Begin, 'as he was shouting . . . '.

l. 19. **alter e Cascis**, 'one of the two Cascas'.

l. 20. **Caesar . . . traiecit**, *lit.*, 'Caesar pierced the seized arm of Casca', i.e. 'Caesar seized Casca's arm and pierced it'. Latin writers preferred, when making two statements about a single subject, to express the earlier in the form of a perfect participle passive. Cf. 'they captured and killed the messenger', **nuntium captum interficiunt**. Cf. also l. 5 above.

l. 21. **graphio**. This was a pointed instrument of bone or metal which the Romans used for writing on their waxen tablets. The other end was blunt and used for obliterations.

l. 22. **ut**, 'as' or 'when'. Notice the indicative mood.

l. 23. **peti**. Parse carefully.

l. 23. **toga**, ablative.

l. 24. **sinum**, 'the lap of his toga' (or robe).

l. 24. **ad ima crura**, 'to his feet below'.

l. 25. **quo**. Why **quo**, and not **ut**?

l. 25. **honestius**, 'more decently'.

l. 27. **uno modo . . . edito**, *lit.*, 'one groan only at the first blow having been uttered without a word', i.e. 'uttering no words, but only one groan at the first blow'.

l. 28. **quidam**, 'some (authorities)'.

l. 29. **dixisse**, supply **eum** as the subject, 'that he (i.e. Caesar) spoke to M. Brutus . . . '.

l. 29. The Greek words (*kai su teknon?*) mean, 'you too, my child?'

l. 29. **exanimis**, nom. in agreement with the subject.

l. 30. **lecticae impositum . . . tres servoli . . . rettulerunt**. Translate as if we had **imposuerunt et rettulerunt**. Read again the note on l. 20 above.

l. 30. **lecticae**, locative, 'on a litter'.

l. 32. **nec in tot vulneribus . . . letale ullum repertum est**, 'and in so many wounds, none was found (to be) mortal . . . '.

l. 34. **nisi quod**, 'except (the one) which '.

l. 35. **coniuratis**. Translate as a genitive.

l. 35. **occisi**, 'of the murdered man '.

l. 36. **metu**, 'through fear of . . . '.

l. 37. **magistri equitum**. The chief lieutenant of a Roman dictator was called 'Master of the Horse '. After his victory over the Senate and Pompey in the Civil Wars, Caesar had had himself appointed dictator.

l. 39. **in Martio campo**. The 'Field of Mars ' was a large open space outside the walls of Rome, situated in a bend of the river Tiber. On the **campus**, the young Romans performed their exercises and a most important assembly of the citizens was held.

l. 40. **Iuliae**. Julia was Caesar's daughter who had been married to Pompey in the days when the two men shared practically all the real power in the Roman empire. No doubt her death in 54 B.C. in childbed, five years after her marriage, was a contributory cause to the separation of the two men.

l. 41. **aedes**, 'shrine '. **collocata**, supply **est**.

l. 41. **ad simulacrum**, 'in the likeness '. **Veneris Genetricis**. The worship of 'Venus the Mother ', established in the second century B.C. by the Scipio mentioned in Cicero's speech against Verres, emphasized the supposed descent of the Romans from the Trojan descendants of Aeneas who had settled in Latium after their many years wandering over the Mediterranean. Aeneas was said to be the son of Venus. It was natural for her worship to be closely associated with Caesar because the Julian clan to which he belonged traced its descent from Ascanius (often called Iulus), the son of Aeneas.

l. 42. **intra**, 'within ', an adverb.

l. 42. **lectus** is subject of **erat** understood. **stratus**, from **sterno**.

l. 43. **ad caput**, 'at its head '.

l. 44. **Praeferentibus . . . videbatur.** Begin with the **quia** clause and make **videbatur** impersonal in English, 'because it seemed that the day . . .'. **Praeferentibus**, dative to be taken after **suffecturus**.

Note that Latin prefers to use **videor**, 'seem', personally if possible.

l. 45. **praeceptum.** Supply **est**, perfect passive, impersonal, 'instructions were given'.

l. 45. **ut . . . Campum.** Begin with **ut quisque portaret (dona) in Campum . . .**

l. 45. **omisso ordine, lit.,** 'order (of precedence) abandoned' = 'without any order of precedence'.

l. 47. **inter ludos,** 'during the (funeral) games'.

l. 47. **quaedam,** 'certain (words)', subject of **cantata sunt**.

l. 48. **ad . . . accommodata,** 'arranged with a view to (**ad**) (exciting) pity and indignation at his death'.

caedis depends on both the nouns **miserationem et invidiam**. It is an *objective* genitive.

l. 49. **ex Pacuvi . . . iudicio,** 'from the *Contest for the Arms* of Pacuvius'.

Pacuvius, a Roman tragic poet, flourished during the first half of the second century B.C., at the time when the Roman campaigns in Greece made them alive to the literary achievement of the Greeks. Thus several Roman tragic poets were stimulated to introduce Greek tragedies to Roman audiences by translating their works almost entirely into Latin. Pacuvius is said, however, to have shown a little more originality than most of his contemporaries.

The 'Contest for the Arms', a subject that forms the theme of Sophocles' *Ajax*, relates the struggle between Ajax the Telamonian and Odysseus (Ulysses) for the armour of Achilles after the latter's death.

l. 50. **men servasse . . . men = mene.** 'Did I save (men) to be (men) to destroy me'.

Here we have a reference to the fact that amongst those who plotted to assassinate Caesar were many who had fought

against him in the Civil Wars, and after his victory had been spared by him and restored to positions of responsibility in the country.

l. 51. **ex Electra Atili**, 'and from the *Electra* of Atilius'.

Electra was the daughter of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae and commander-in-chief of the Greek expedition against Troy. Her father was murdered on his return from Troy by his wife Clytemnestra. In revenge, she was murdered by her son Orestes, whom Electra had smuggled out of her native country to save him from his disloyal mother.

Of Atilius (first half of the second century B.C.) we know little, not even with certainty that this Atilius, who has obviously written a tragedy which is based on, or is a translation of, the famous play by Sophocles, is the same as a writer of comedies of the same name and called by Cicero **durissimus poeta**.

l. 51. **laudationis loco**, 'in place of a eulogy'.

l. 53. **omnia divina atque humana**, 'all divine and human honours'.

l. 54. **ius iurandum**, accusative case, object of **pronuntiavit**.

l. 55. **cuncti . . . unius**, 'all for the safety (of him) alone'.

l. 56. **pro rostris**, qualifies **lectum**, 'the bier in front of the rostra'.

l. 57. **magistratus et honoribus functi**, 'magistrates and those who had held office'. Note: (i) **fungor** + abl.; (ii) **honor**, -oris, *m.*, ' (political) office '.

l. 58. **Quem cum pars . . . cremare destinaret**, 'when some were intending to burn it (**quem**) in the temple . . . , others in the Hall of Pompey'.

Jupiter's temple was situated on the Capitoline Hill in Rome: hence the surname Capitulinus.

Pompeius is Pompey the Great, 106-48 B.C., Caesar's partner in the First Triumvirate, 60 B.C., his son-in-law and later his rival in the Civil Wars. There were three buildings associated with the name of Pompey: first the stone theatre he built (55-52 B.C.), outside of which there was a building of parallel

rows of columns to form a **porticus**, and finally the Hall of Pompey (**Curia Pompeii**) adjoining the Portico, with one side covered and equipped with tiers of seats. Here the senate met, and here Caesar was murdered to fall at the foot of the great statue of Pompey which stood in the centre.

l. 59. **duo quidam**, these 'two certain people' are supernatural: hence we may say 'two beings'.

l. 61. **succenderunt**. The object is 'the pyre' understood from the **quem**, l. 58.

l. 61. **circumstantium turba**, 'the crowd of men standing around' = 'the crowd of spectators'.

l. 63. **congressit**. There are three objects: (i) **virgulta arida**, (ii) **cum subselliis tribunalia**, i.e. 'judgment-seats with the benches', (iii) **quicquid . . . aderat**, *lit.*, 'whatever besides was handy for a gift'.

l. 64. **scaenici artifices**, 'artists of the stage', i.e. 'actors'.

l. 64. **vestem . . . detractam sibi atque . . . flammae. detractam** and **discissam** are both in agreement with **vestem**. The use of the perfect participle passive where English prefers a finite verb has already been explained in the notes on l. 20. Translate here as if we had **vestem quam . . . detraxerunt sibi, disciderunt atque iniecere** (= **iniecerunt**). **sibi**, dative of disadvantage, 'from themselves'. **flammae** is dative, 'into the flames'.

l. 67. **arma sua** is the object of **iniecere** (to be repeated).

l. 68. **quibus . . . celebrabant**, *lit.*, 'with which adorned they were attending the funeral', i.e. 'with which they were adorned for their attendance at the funeral'.

l. 69. **ornamenta**, acc. n. pl., object of **iniecere** (understood), 'jewels'.

l. 70. **bullas**. The **bulla** was a kind of amulet, usually of gold, which Roman children of good family wore around their necks until they came of age. The **bulla** was then consecrated to the Lares, or Gods of their family home.

l. 70. **praetexta**. The **toga praetexta** was a robe bordered

with purple which was worn by important magistrates and also by free-born children, by the latter until they were old enough at the age of 17 to wear the man's toga, **toga virilis**, a plain outer garment of undyed wool.

l. 72. **circulatim . . . lamentata est**, *lit.*, 'in groups lamented'.

l. 72. **suo quaeque more**, 'each in its native (**suo**) manner'.

Note: (i) the position of **quaeque** when used as it is so often in Latin idiom with the possessive **suus**; (ii) **quaeque** is feminine, to agree in gender with **gens** (from **gentium**).

l. 73. **Iudaei**. The Jews had been brought within the frontiers of the Roman Empire by Pompey, who had outraged Jewish religious feeling by entering and thus violating the Holy of Holies in the temple at Jerusalem. Though the fact that Caesar had defeated Pompey would thus be enough to make him popular with the Jews, he had shown them the kindness and generosity which characterized his attitude to non-Romans, an attitude which his contemporaries neither shared nor appreciated.

l. 73. **noctibus continuis**, 'for (several) nights on end'. The ablative is used because the visits took place *at* specific times on successive nights.

l. 76. **obvium sibi H. Cinnam . . . occidit**, *lit.*, 'slew H. Cinna meeting them'. Although the **obvium** agrees grammatically with **Cinnam**, we might render, 'met H. Cinna and slew him . . .'.

l. 77. **quasi . . . esset**. Comparative clauses have the subjunctive mood where the comparison as here is unreal.

The mob mistakes the poet Helvius Cinna for his namesake Cornelius Cinna. Although the latter had been appointed praetor by Caesar, he opposed the dictator and was a party to his assassination.

l. 78. **quem . . . requirebat**. Another good example of the Latin preference for the participle where we prefer a finite verb, 'whom, having bitterly inveighed against Caesar yesterday, the mob was looking for'. Translate the participle as a causal clause.

l. 79. **caputque eius praefixum hastae circumtulit**. The char-

acteristic use of the participle again. Make **praefixum**, *lit.*, 'having been fixed upon', a main verb in the active, 'they fixed . . .', etc.

l. 80. **solidam** . . . **Numidici**, 'a solid column of Numidian marble almost 20 feet (high)'.

l. 82. **Parenti Patriae**. The title of **Parens Patriae** had been given to Cicero for his decisive action in crushing the dangerous conspiracy of Catiline in 63 B.C. This honorary title, now given to Caesar, became a title of the Roman Emperors, and is designated by the initials P.P. which may be seen on their coins.

l. 83. **controversias** . . . **distrahere**, 'to settle some disputes by an oath given (=in the name of) Caesar'.

l. 85. **perseveravit**. The subject, as of **statuit** and **inscripsit**, is **plebs**, but say 'they'.

l. 87. **neque** . . . **uteretur**, dependent on **suspicionem**, 'the suspicion that . . .'.

l. 87. **curasse** = **curavisse**.

l. 87. **quod** . . . **uteretur**, 'because he was not enjoying good health'; *lit.*, 'because he used health less good'.

l. 88. **ideoque** . . . **neglexisse**. **neglexisse** dependent in acc. and infin. construction as **curasse** above. **quae** . . . **monerent**, **quae** . . . **amici**, are objects of **neglexisse**, with **quae** (relative) meaning 'what'.

l. 90. **sunt qui putent**, *lit.*, 'there are such as think' = 'some think'. **putent** is consecutive subjunctive, but this form of it is known as generic, because the understood antecedent of **qui** denotes a class (**genus**), not particular individuals.

l. 90. **confisum** . . . **removisse**, 'that trusting in . . . he dismissed even the armed bodyguard of . . .'.

novissimo, 'recent'. Note that **confido** is semi-deponent and takes the dative.

custodias . . . **gladiis**, *lit.*, 'guards of Spaniards with swords'.

adsectantium, in agreement with **Hispanorum**, 'of Spaniards that accompanied him'.

l. 94. **quam cavere semper sollicitum**, 'rather than to be on his guard, perpetually uneasy'.

l. 95. **solitum**. Supply **se** and **esse**.

l. 96. **non . . . interesse**. **interest**, 'it is of importance', which normally takes gen. of the person concerned, prefers the forms **meā**, **tuā**, etc., with personal pronouns. Note that this sentence illustrates both constructions: 'that it was of importance not so much to him (**sua**) but to his country (**rei publicae**)'.

l. 97. **se . . . adeptum**. **abunde**, adverb, is treated by Suetonius as an indeclinable noun, meaning 'plenty', and has the partitive genitives **potentiae** and **gloriae** dependent on it.

l. 99. **aliquanto deteriore condicione**, 'under considerably worse conditions'. Note **aliquanto**, ablative of the measure of difference.

l. 101. **constitit**, perfect of **constat**, 'it is agreed'. **illud** (nom.) anticipates the following acc. and infin., and must be translated 'this'.

l. 102. **paene ex sententia**, 'practically in accordance with his desire'.

l. 102. **et quondam**. The **et** before **quondam** means 'both' and can be ignored.

l. 103. **apud Xenophontem**, 'in Xenophon'. Xenophon, the Athenian soldier of fortune, author and philosopher, lived from 444 to 354 B.C. and wrote several famous books, the best known of which are the *Anabasis*, the account of the expedition of Cyrus and the successful retreat of the Greeks, and the *Cyropaedia*, the story of Cyrus, the founder of the Persian empire. It is from the latter work that this story is taken.

l. 104. **ultima valetudine**, 'in his last illness'.

l. 106. **et pridie quam occideretur**. Silver Latin sometimes employs the subjunctive in clauses purely temporal, where classical usage preferred the indicative. **pridie quam**, 'on the day before'.

l. 107. **in . . . Lepidum**, 'in a conversation which began at a dinner at the house of M. Lepidus'.

l. 108. **quisnam . . . commodissimus**, indirect question dependent on the verbal idea contained in **sermone**, 'as to what . . . '.

l. 111. **in deorum numerum relatus est**, 'and was added to the number of the gods' = 'and was numbered among the gods'.

l. 111. **non ore decernentium**, 'not only by the lips of those decreeing it'.

l. 113. **Percussorum . . . supervixit**. Take **fere** before **neque quisquam** (the latter two words combining to mean 'no-one') and **amplius** before **triennio**.

l. 114. **sua morte. suus** often has the force of 'proper', 'natural'.

l. 115. **alius alio casu, lit.**, 'one in one way, (another in another)', i.e. 'in different ways'.

ST. JEROME

Line 2. **custodiis**. The abstract noun **custodia**, 'confinement', is here used for the concrete 'person confined', 'prisoner'.

l. 3. **cohortis Augustae**. For this title of honour compare the English 'Royal Regiment'. Several Roman legions had this distinction.

l. 3. **ascendentes**. Notice throughout this piece the loose employment of the present participle in a perfect meaning. Thus the absence of a perfect participle active, one of the prime deficiencies of classical Latin, is compensated for.

l. 4. **Hadrumetinam**. Hadrumetum was in the Roman province of Africa. There seems to have been no direct communication by sea between Palestine and Italy. As we read later, the centurion Julius merely takes the 'ship of Hadrumetum' as a means of reaching a port whence some such direct service was available.

l. 5. **sustulimus**, used without **ancoram**, as in English we can say 'we weighed'.

l. 8. **ire.** **ut iret** in classical Latin.

l. 9. **subnavigavimus Cypro**, i.e. along the north coast of Cyprus.

l. 10. **essent.** **erant** in classical Latin.

l. 12. **Lyciae**, gen. But English says 'in Lycia'. Compare the familiar 'in Bethlehem of Judaea'.

l. 14. **multis diebus**, i.e. **multos dies**.

l. 15. **Cnidum**. At the tip of a long peninsula jutting out from the Turkish coast, north east of Rhodes.

l. 16. **Salmonem**, the eastern headland of Crete. They sail along the south coast of Crete.

l. 21. **ieiunium**, a Jewish fast, the Day of Atonement, falling in autumn when the good sailing weather was nearing its end.

l. 22. **quoniam** = 'that'. Clauses introduced by this word, or by **quod** or **quia**, are common in late Latin where the classical language has acc. and infin.

l. 27. **consilium**, object of **statuerunt**, but redundant if we translate **statuerunt** by its common meaning 'determined'.

l. 29. **portum** is in apposition with **Phoenicen**.

l. 30. **Africum et Corum**. These are winds, the S.W. and the N.W. Probably the allusion is to the harbour's two entrances, to either side of an island which lies off it.

l. 32. **de asson**—the latter is a Greek word—'close to shore'.

l. 34. **Euroaquilo**, i.e. the N.E. wind, adverse to mariners seeking Italy.

l. 37. **vix obtinere scapham**. Perhaps it was being swamped.

l. 38. **adiutoriis**, 'helps', ropes passed under the keel, serving literally to hold the ship together. Ropes for this undergirding process formed part of the stores carried by Athenian triremes.

l. 39. **syrtim**, a dreaded sand-bank off the African coast, near Cyrene.

l. 39. **vase**. The word appears to be one of general meaning, 'spars', 'top hamper'.

- l. 41. **iactum**, 'a jettisoning'—of the cargo.
- l. 42. **armamenta**, apparently the *spare* tackle, from what we hear later.
- l. 48. **tollere**, cf. **sustulimus** above, and note.
- l. 48. **lucri facere**, originally a phrase meaning 'gain', here seems to mean 'experience'.
- l. 49. **esse. ut sitis** in classical Latin.
- l. 52. **Ne timeas**, i.e. **noli timere** or **ne timueris**.
- l. 55. **estote** = **este**, 2nd pl. imperative of **sum**.
- l. 56. **quia**: see note on **quoniam** above.
- l. 59. **Hadria**. It included areas further south than our modern Adriatic.
- l. 61. **summittentes**, i.e. 'sounding'.
- l. 62. **passus**. The Roman **passus** was *two* of our paces. Hence the translation 'fathom' (=6 feet) is not far out.
- l. 62. **pusillum**, adv., 'a little way'.
- l. 62. **separati**, perf. partic. of a passive verb used as a deponent, 'having proceeded'.
- l. 65. **de puppi mittentes anchoras quattuor**, i.e. to check the forward way of the ship.
- l. 66. **diem fieri** = **ut dies fieret**.
- l. 74. **ieiuni**, nom. pl. of an adjective, 'fasting'.
- l. 75. **accipere**, i.e. **ut accipiatis**.
- l. 82. **satiati cibo**, 'sated with food'.
- l. 82. **triticum**. The vessel was obviously one of the grain fleet that carried Egyptian corn to Italy. Clearly the previous lightening of the ship had been only partial.
- l. 85. **litus**, i.e. a beach.
- l. 86. **committebant se mari**, 'they entrusted themselves to the sea'. The English (revised) version, 'left them (i.e. the anchors) in the sea', translates the Greek differently.
- l. 87. **iuncturas gubernaculorum**. It would seem that the tiller had been lashed, and was now freed in order that the ship might be steered to shore.

1. 88. **artemone**. No doubt a big lateen sail.
1. 89. **locum bithalassum**, the Bay of St. Paul, north east coast of Malta.
1. 91. **a vi maris**. The preposition would not have been inserted in classical Latin.
1. 94. **prohibuit**, supply **id**.
1. 100. **Melita** is the best known form. St. Jerome probably wrote **Militene**.
1. 100. **Barbari**. They were civilized enough, being probably Carthaginian by race. But **barbarus** means anyone whose native tongue was not Greek or Latin.
1. 104. **sarmentorum**, 'sticks', 'twigs'.
1. 107. **ad invicem** = **inter se**.
1. 115. **principis**. Inscriptions show that this was actually the title of the chief man of the island.
1. 116. **triduo**, **abl.** = **per tres dies**.
1. 117. **Contigit**, 'it happened', mostly used in classical Latin of fortunate occurrences.
1. 118. **iacere**. **iaceo** often has this meaning of 'lie sick'.
1. 122. **navigantibus** agrees with **nobis** understood in the **abl. abs.** construction.
1. 123. **post menses tres**—the winter months in which all navigation ceased.
1. 125. **cui erat insigne Castorum**, 'which had the figure-head of the Heavenly Twins', the Dioscuri, Castor and Pollux, the special protectors of sailors.
1. 127. **Regium**, now Reggio di Calabria, on the Italian side of the Straits of Messina.
1. 128. **Puteolos**, on the Bay of Naples, now Pozzuoli.
1. 129. **fratribus**, i.e. fellow Christians.
1. 129. **manere** = **ut maneremus**. Julius seems to have had a good deal of freedom to act on his own responsibility.

VOCABULARY

(In the following vocabulary only irregular verbs are given their principal parts in full. Otherwise the figures (1), (2), (3), (4) following a verb denote that it is a regular example of that conjugation. No conjugation number is given in the case of -io verbs like capio.)

A. = Aulus.

a, ab, *with abl.*, from, by, at;
on (**ab utroque umero**), after
(**a funere**).

abdo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, hide.

abduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum,
draw aside.

abeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, depart.

abicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, cast
away.

abnuo, -ere, -nui, -nutum, repu-
diate, deny.

absens, -sentis, absent.

absolvo, -ere, -solvi, -solutum,
acquit.

abstinentia, -ae, *f.*, innocence.

abstineo, -ere, -ui, -entum, keep
... off ... (*acc. and dat.*).

abstrusus, -a, -um, reserved.

absum, -esse, afui, be absent,
away.

abunde, *adv.*, in abundance.

ac, *see atque*.

accedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum,
draw near.

accessio, -onis, *f.*, addition.

accido, -ere, -di, happen.

accio (4), call, summon.

accipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, re-
ceive, take into, take, accept.

accommodo (1), arrange.

accusatio, -onis, *f.*, prosecution.

accusator, -oris, *m.*, prosecutor.

accuso (1), prosecute.

acta, -orum, *n. pl.*, decrees.

actio, -onis, *f.*, action (at law);
process (*Cic.*).

ad, *with acc.*, to, towards; for;
in addition to; at; against.

adcelero (1), hasten.

adclamo (1), shout, shout at or to.

adcreasco, -ere, -crevi, -cretum,
grow up to.

adcurro, -ere, -cucurri, -cursum,
run to or up.

adcursus, -us, *m.*, running up,
rush.

addo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, add,
give.

adduco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, bring in.

adeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, approach.

adeo, *adv.*, to such an extent.

adfero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, (*pf.*
and supine often attuli, allatum)
bring.

adfacio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, treat
(with).

adfligo, -ere, -xi, -ctum, afflict.

adhibeo (2), invite; use (*Tacitus*).

adhortor (1), encourage.

adhuc, *adv.*, still.

adicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, add.

- adimo**, -ere, -emi, -emptum, take away.
adipiscor, -i, adeptus, gain.
adiuvo, -are, -iuvi, -iutum, help.
adlevo (1), raise, lift, lighten.
adloquor, -i, -locutus, address.
admodum, *adv.*, quite.
admoneo (2), order.
adnoto (1), remark.
adprehendo, -ere, -di, -nsum, seize, catch.
adsector (1), attend upon.
adsentior, -iri, -sensus, agree.
adsequor, -i, -secutus, pursue.
adsido, -ere, -sedi, sit down.
adsimulo (1), compare.
adstrepo, -ere, chime in.
adsum, -esse, -fui, am here, *or* there; am present.
adsurgo, -ere, -rexi, -rectum, rise.
adulescens, -ntis, *m.*, youth, young man.
adulescentia, -ae, *f.*, youth.
adulescentulus, -a; -um, young.
adulterium, -i, *n.*, adultery.
advena, -ae, *m.*, visitor.
advenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, arrive.
adventus, -us, *m.*, arrival.
adversor (1), *with dat.*, oppose, resist.
adversus, *prep. with acc.*, against.
adversus, -a, -um, opposite.
adverto, -ere, -ti, -sum, turn to.
advocatus, -i, *m.*, counsel, advocate.
advolvo, -ere, -vi, -utum, roll . . . to; *in pass.*, fling oneself at (*with dat.*).
advorsus (= **adversus**), hostile.
aedes, -is, *f.*, shrine.
aedificator, -oris, *m.*, builder.
aedifico (1), build.
aegre, *adv.*, with difficulty.
aegroto (1), am ill.
aemulatio, -ionis, *f.*, jealousy.
aemulus, -a, -um, rival.
Aeneas, -ae, *m.*, Aeneas (*Trojan prince*).
aequalis, -e, equal.
aeque ac, so much as.
aequus, -a, -um, even; **aequo animo**, with even temper, calmly, contentedly.
aerarium, -i, *n.*, treasury.
aes, **aeris**, *n.*, bronze.
aestivus, -a, -um, of summer, summer (*as adj.*).
aetas, -atis, *f.*, age.
aeternitas, -atis, *f.*, immortality.
aeternus, -a, -um, everlasting.
Africa, -ae, *f.*, Africa.
ager, **agri**, *m.*, field, land, soil.
agger, -eris, *m.*, rampart.
aggero, -ere, -ssi, -stum, pile up.
agito (1), ponder; rouse up, urge.
agmen, -inis, *n.*, troop.
ago, -ere, egi, actum, do; deal, discuss; act, play; drive; plead (*in court*).
Agrigentinus, -a, -um, of Agrigentum (*town in Sicily*).
ait, he (she) says, said.
algeo (2), am cold.
alienigena, -ae, *m.*, one of another race.
alieno (1), alienate, estrange.
alienus, -a, -um, of others; *as noun* **alienum**, -i, *n.*, others' property.
alio, *adv.*, elsewhere.
alioqui, *adv.*, otherwise.
aliquamdiu, *adv.*, for some time.

aliquando, *adv.*, at last, finally; once.

aliquanto, *adv.*, considerably.

aliquantum, *adv.*, somewhat.

aliqui, -ae, -quod, some, any.

aliquis, -quid, some one or thing.

aliquot, *indeclin.*, several.

alius, -a, -ud, other, different, else.

Allobroges, -um, *m. pl.*, the Allobroges (Gallic tribe).

alter, -era, -erum, another, the one, the other.

amata, -ae, *f.*, loved one.

ambitio, -ionis, *f.*, careerism, eagerness to get on.

ambo, -ae, -o, both.

ambulator, -oris, *m.*, a gad-about.

ambulatrix, -icis, *f.*, a (female) gad-about.

ambulo (1), walk; navigate (*Cato*); gad about.

amentia, -ae, *f.*, madness, folly.

amicitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.

amicus, -i, *m.*, friend.

amitto, -ere, -misi, -misum, lose.

amnis, -is, *m.*, river.

amor, -oris, *m.*, love.

amplector, -i, -plexus, clasp, embrace.

amplexor (1), cling to.

amplius, *adv.*, more than.

amplus, -a, -um, big.

an, or, whether (*in questions*).

anima, -ae, *f.*, life.

animadverto, -ere, -ti, -sum, notice.

animus, -i, *m.*, mind, spirit; confidence; nature, courage, temper, inclination, intention.

annus, -i, *m.*, year.

ante, *prep. with acc.*, before; as *adv.*, before, earlier.

antiquus, -a, -um, ancient.

Antistus, -i, *m.*, Antistus.

Antonius, -i, *m.*, Marcus Antonius.

aperio, -ire, -erui, -ertum, open; throw light upon (*Sallust*).

appareo (2), am obvious (*Cato*); turn up, am seen; am in sight.

appello (1), call upon.

appetendus, -a, -um, worth seeking after.

approbo (1), justify.

apud, *prep. with acc.*, in the days of; in the work of; with, in the arms of; before; in the presence of; among, in.

aquarium, -i, *n.*, water-supply.

aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle.

ara, -ae, *f.*, altar.

arbiter, -tri, *m.*, witness.

arbitrium, -i, *n.*, power, authority; decision.

arbitror (1), think, consider.

arbustum, -i, *n.*, orchard.

arcesso, -ere, -ivi, -itum, summon, send for.

arcus, -us, *m.*, bow.

ardens, -ntis, burning.

ardeo, -ere, -rsi, arsum, burn, blaze.

argentarius, -a, -um, cash (*as adj.*).

arguo, -ere, -ui, -utum, denounce.

aridus, -a, -um, dry.

Ariston, -onis, *m.*, Ariston.

arma, -orum, *n. pl.*, arms; fighting, war.

armatus, -a, -um, armed; *as noun*, an armed man.

armentum, -i, *n.*, herd of cattle.

armo (1), equip.

Arria, -ae, *f.*, Arria.

arripio, -ere, -ui, **arreptum**, seize, snatch.

ars, **artis**, *f.*, workmanship; skill (*Tacitus* 46); means (*Tacitus* 149); trick.

artifex, -ficis, *m.*, craftsman, artist.

artificium, -i, *n.*, skill, art.

ascendo, -ere, -ndi, -nsum, board.

asper, -era, -erum, dangerous.

aspernor (1), disdain; reject, despise.

aspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, behold.

assideo, -ere, -sedi, sit down.

astringo, -ere, -nxi, -ctum, bind, pledge.

at, but; at latest (*Cato*).

Atilius, -i, *m.*, Atilius.

atque, and, and moreover.

atqui, but.

atrox, -ocis, fierce.

attendo, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, examine.

attente, *adv.*, energetically; closely, carefully; *compar.* **attentius**.

Attilius, -i, *m.*, Attilius.

attingo, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, touch, handle.

auctio, -ionis, *f.*, sale.

auctor, -oris, *m.*, creator.

audacia, -ae, *f.*, daring, audacity; recklessness.

audeo, -ere, **ausus sum**, dare, venture.

audio, (4), hear, listen to.

aufero, -ferre, **abstuli**, **ablatum**, take away.

aufugio, -ere, -fugi, run away.

augeo, -ere, -xi, -ctum, increase (*trans.*).

augur, -uris, *m.*, prophet.

Augustus, -i, *m.*, Augustus.

auratus, -a, -um, gilded.

auris, -is, *f.*, ear.

aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold.

ausculto (1), listen.

auspicia, -orum, *n. pl.*, auspices.

aut, or, either.

autem, but, moreover.

auxilium, -i, *n.*, help, aid.

avaritia, -ae, *f.*, greed.

aversor (1), turn away from; frown upon.

aversus, -a, -um, turned away.

averto, -ere, -ti, -sum, alienate.

avia, -ae, *f.*, grandmother.

barbarus, -i, *m.*, foreigner.

basis, -is, *f.*, pedestal.

bello (1), am at war.

bellum, -i, *n.*, war.

bene, *adv.*, well, wisely.

beneficium, -i, *n.*, good work; benefaction.

benignus, -a, -um, kindly.

bini, -ae, -a, two each.

bis, *adv.*, twice.

blanditia, -ae, *f.*, cajolery.

Blaesus, -i, *m.*, Blaesus (Junius).

bonus, -a, -um, good; **bona**, *n. pl.*, goods, property; good qualities.

bos, **bovis**, *c.*, ox.

bracchium, -i, *n.*, arm.

Brutus, -i, *m.*, Decimus Brutus.

bullā, -ae, *f.*, amulet.

bustum, -i, *n.*, funeral pyre, tomb.

C. = Caius.

cadaver, -is, *n.*, corpse.

cado, -ere, **ceci**, **casum**, fall.

Caecina, -ae, *m.*, Caecina.
caedes, -is, *f.*, murder.
caedo, -ere, cecidi, caesum, cut, kill.
caeduus, -a, -um, of fellable timber.
caelum, -i, *n.*, climate; sky, heavens.
Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Caesar.
caespes, -itis, *m.*, turf.
calamitas, -atis, *f.*, disaster.
calamitosus, -a, -um, subject to disaster.
calcio (4), put shoes on; *in pass.*, have one's shoes put on.
calumnia, -ae, *f.*, false accusation.
campus, -i, *m.*, plain; **campus Martius**, plain of Mars.
canities, -ei, *f.*, white hairs.
canto (1), sing.
canus, -a, -um, white.
capesso, -ere, take in hand, seize the helm of.
capio, -ere, cepi, captum, capture; take up; seize; drive; experience.
capitalis, -e, capital (charge).
Capitolinus, -a, -um, Capitoline, of or on the Capitol.
captiva, -ae, *f.*, (female) prisoner.
captivus, -i, *m.*, prisoner.
caput, -itis, *n.*, head.
carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison.
Carthaginiensis, -e, Carthaginian.
Carthago, -inis, *f.*, Carthage.
carus, -a, -um, dear.
Casca, -ae, *m.*, Casca.
Cassius, -i, *m.*, Cassius.
castra, -orum, *n. pl.*, camp, base.
casus, -us, *m.*, chance, way.
cathedra, -ae, *f.*, (arm-)chair.

Catilina, -ae, *m.*, Catiline.
causa, -ae, *f.*, excuse (*Cato*); reason, case, cause; *abl.*, causā, for the sake of.
caute, *adv.*, cautiously.
caveo, -ere, cavi, cautum, beware; be on one's guard; **caveo ab**, take precautions against.
cedo, -ere, cessi, cessum, turn out.
celeber, -bris, -bre, busy.
celebro (1), honour, attend.
cella, -ae, *f.*, temple.
celo (1), hide, conceal.
cena, -ae, *f.*, dinner.
censeo, -ere, censui, think, propose; recommend.
cento, -onis, *m.*, patchwork smock.
centum, a hundred.
centuria, -ae, *f.*, century.
centurio, -onis, *m.*, centurion.
cereus, -i, *m.*, taper, torch.
cerno, -ere, crevi, cretum, see.
certamen, -inis, *n.*, contest, struggle.
certe, *adv.*, certainly.
certo (1), vie.
certus, -a, -um, certain, sure, fixed.
ceterus, -a, -um, the rest of; *pl.*, ceteri, the others.
chaldaeus, -i, *m.*, astrologer.
cibaria, -orum, *n. pl.*, food, rations.
cibus, -i, *m.*, food.
cieo, -ere, civi, citum, call upon by name.
Cimber, -bri, *m.*, Tillius Cimber.
cingo, -ere, cinxi, -nctum, surround.
circa, *adv.*, round about.

circulatum, *adv.*, in groups.
circum, *prep. with acc.*, around.
circumeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, go round, visit.
circumfero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, carry round; circulate.
circumfundo, -ere, -fudi, -fusum, pour round.
circumiecta, -orum, *n. pl.*, neighbourhood.
circumsisto, -ere, -stiti, stand around, surround.
circumspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, look round.
circumsto, -are, -steti, stand round, surround.
circumvenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, surround.
circumverro, -ere, -i, sweep round; *perf. partic. pass.*, **circumversus**.
civilis, -e, civil.
civis, -is, *m.*, citizen; fellow-citizen.
civitas, -atis, *f.*, state, city; community.
clamito (1), shout.
clamo (1), shout.
clamor, -oris, *m.*, a shout, cry.
claritudo, -inis, *f.*, clearness; distinction.
clarus, -a, -um, glorious, famous; loud (*Tacitus* 107); clear (*Tacitus* 157).
Claudius, -i, *m.*, Claudius.
claudio, -ere, -si, -sum, close, lock up.
Clemens, -entis, Julius Clemens.
coctus, *see coquo*.
codicilli, -orum, *m. pl.*, will.
coepi, -isse, **coeptus**, began.
coetus, -us, *m.*, crowd, gathering.

cogito (1), think, reflect.
cognatio, -onis, *f.*, tie of blood.
cognitio, -onis, *f.*, (law-)case; trial.
cognomentum, -i, *n.*, name.
cognosco, -ere, -ovi, -itum, learn, ascertain.
cogo, -ere, **coegi**, **coactum**, compel.
cohibeo (2), hold back.
cohors, -rtis, *f.*, cohort.
collatus, -a, -um, *see confero*.
colligo, -ere, -legi, -lectum, deduce (*Pliny*).
colloco (1), place.
colo, -ere, **colui**, **cultum**, cultivate.
colonus, -i, *m.*, farmer.
columna, -ae, *f.*, column.
comitas, -tatis, *f.*, courteousness.
commemoratio, -onis, *f.*, mention.
commemoro (1), mention.
commisceo, -ere, -miscui, -mixtum, mix, put with.
committo, -ere, -misi, -misum, confide.
commodum, -i, *n.*, advantage, interest.
commodus, -a, -um, easy, fitting, suitable.
communis, -e, common, in common.
communiter, *adv.*, jointly.
compareo (2), appear, am seen.
compleo, -ere, -plevi, -pletum, cover, crown.
composite, *adv.*, eloquently.
compositus, -a, -um, calmed, composed.
concedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, pass; withdraw; grant (*Tacitus* 135).

concentus, -us, *m.*, blare, noise.
concio, -ere, -civi, -citum,
 arouse, stir up.
concordia, -ae, *f.*, harmony.
condicio, -onis, *f.*, condition.
condo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, found,
 establish; hide (*Tacitus* 165).
condono (1), forgive.
conduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum,
 hire, charter.
confero, -ferre, -tuli, collatum,
 compare.
confestim, *adv.*, immediately.
conficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum,
 complete, carry out.
confido, -ere, -fiscus sum, trust
 (often with *dative*).
confirmo (1), confirm.
confiteor, -eri, -fessus sum, ad-
 mit, confess.
conflagro (1), burn, am con-
 sumed.
confodio, -ere, -fodi, -fossum,
 stab.
confusus, -a, -um, troubled.
congero, -ere, -gessi, -gestum,
 pile up, heap.
congrego (1), group together.
coniungo, -ere, -iunxi, -iunctum,
 bind, unite.
coniunx, -iugis, *f.*, wife.
coniuratio, -onis, *f.*, conspiracy.
coniuratus, -i, *m.*, conspirator.
coniuro (1), conspire.
conor (1), try.
Compitalia, -orum, *n. pl.*, the
 Compitalia.
conpitiū, -i, *n.*, cross-roads.
conquiesco, -ere, -quievi, -quie-
 tum, rest.
conquiro, -ere, -quisivi, -quisi-
 tum, collect, search for.

conscriptus, -a, -um, enrolled.
conservo (1), save, preserve.
considero (1), examine, inspect;
 take thought, contemplate.
consido, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, take
 one's seat.
consilium, -i, *n.*, plan, plot, de-
 sign; resolve; council; **consi-
 lium capere**, take decisions.
conspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum,
 catch sight of.
conspicuus, -a, -um, conspicuous.
conspiratus, -a, -um, conspiring,
 agreeing, in conspiracy.
constans, -ntis, stable.
constantia, -ae, *f.*, inflexibility.
constat, *imperson.*, it is agreed,
 established.
consternatio, -onis, *f.*, amaze-
 ment, dismay.
construo, -ere, -uxi, -uctum,
 build up.
consul, -is, *m.*, consul.
consularis, -e, *adj.*, of consular
 rank; *noun*, ex-consul.
consulo, -ere, -sului, -sultum,
 with *acc.*, consult; with *dat.*,
 have regard to; *absol.*, deliber-
 ate, take thought.
consulto (1), deliberate.
consultum, -i, *n.*, decree.
consumo, -ere, -mpsi, -mptum,
 spend.
contemno, -ere, -mpsi, -mptum,
 despise.
contendo, -ere, -di, -tum, fight.
contentus, -a, -um, content,
 satisfied.
continentia, -ae, *f.*, curbing.
contineo (2), with *reflex. pron. as*
object, remain.
continuus, -a, -um, unbroken.

- contio**, -onis, *f.*, meeting.
contionabundus, -a, -um, speaking at a meeting.
contionor (1), speak in public; deliver harangue.
controversia, -ae, *f.*, dispute.
contubernium, -i, *n.*, tent.
convenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, assemble, flock together.
conventus, -us, *m.*, gathering, crowd.
converro, -ere, -i, -sum, sweep.
converto, -ere, -ti, -sum, turn (*trans.*); *in pass.*, turn (*intrans.*).
convictus, -us, *m.*, living together, association.
convinco, -ere, -vici, -victum, convict.
convoco (1), call together, summon.
convorto = **converto**, turn (*intrans.*).
copia, -ae, *f.*, plenty, abundance; opportunity; *pl.*, forces.
coquo, -ere, **coxi**, **coctum**, cook.
coquus, -i, *m.*, cook.
coram, *prep. with abl.*, in the face or presence of.
cornu, -us, *n.*, horn.
corona, -ae, *f.*, garland.
corpus, -oris, *n.*, body.
corrigo, -ere, -rexi, -rectum, chasten.
corrumpo, -ere, -rupi, -ruptum, ruin, corrupt, destroy.
corruo, -ere, -ui, sink to the ground.
cotidie, *adv.*, daily, every day.
creber, -bra, -brum, frequent.
crebro, *adv.*, frequently.
credo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, give credit to, lend (*Cato*); believe, believe in (*with dat.*); suppose.
cremo (1), burn.
crimen, -inis, *n.*, charge, crime.
Crispus, -i, *m.*, Crispus.
cruciatus, -us, *m.*, torture.
crudelis, -e, ruthless, cruel.
cruentus, -a, -um, bloody.
crus, **cruris**, *n.*, leg.
cubiculum, -i, *n.*, bedroom.
cubo, -are, cubui, cubitum, lie.
cuculio, -onis, *m.*, cap.
culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault.
cum, *conj.*, when, since, although;
cum . . . tum . . ., both . . . and . . . ; not only . . . but also.
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with; against.
cumulo (1), heap.
cunctatio, -onis, *f.*, hesitation.
cunctor (1), hesitate.
cunctus, -a, -um, all.
cupide, *adv.*, eagerly.
cupiditas, -atis, *f.*, desire, greed.
cupio, -ere, -ivi, -itum, desire.
cura, -ae, *f.*, anxiety, care.
curia, -ae, *f.*, hall, senate-house.
curo (1), see to it, take care; care.
custodia, -ae, *f.*, guard; prison; care; body-guard.
custodio (4), guard.
Cyrus, -i, *m.*, Cyrus.
Dacia, -ae, *f.*, Dacia.
damno (1), condemn.
de, *prep. with abl.*, from, of, about, concerning.
dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess.
debeo (2), owe; ought.
decedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, die.

- decerno**, -ere, -crevi, -cretum, decide, decree; **decernere de**, to pass judgment on (*Sallust*).
decimus, -a, -um, tenth.
decretum, -i, *n.*, decree.
decursus, -us, *m.*, passage.
decus, -oris, *n.*, seemingly behaviour; honour.
deduco (3), let down.
defectio, -onis, *f.*, revolt.
defendo, -ere, -ndi, -nsum, defend.
defero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, carry down into; denounce; *absol.*, lay information.
deformo (1), mar.
defrudo (1), cheat, stint.
defungor, -i, -functus, (*with morte*), die.
deicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, cast down.
dein, *adv.*, then.
deinde, *adv.*, then; since.
delator, -oris, *m.*, informer.
delenimentum, -i, *n.*, blandishment.
deleo, -ere, -evi, -etum, destroy.
delictum, -i, *n.*, fault, guilt.
deliculus, -a, -um, blemished, inferior.
deligo, -ere, -legi, -lectum, choose.
delinquo, -ere, -liqui, -lictum, offend (*intrans.*), err, sin.
demolior (4), take down.
demonstro (1), point out, show.
demum, *adv.*, at last.
denarius, -i, *m.*, silver coin, a denarius.
denego (1), refuse.
denique, *adv.*, in fact, in short.
denuntio (1), proclaim, declare.
depello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, thwart, frustrate (*Tacitus* 34).
dependeo (2), hang down.
deporto (1), carry away.
deposco, -ere, -poposci, demand.
deprecor (1), beg.
deprendo, -ere, -di, -sum, seize.
descisco, -ere, -scivi, -scitum, revolt.
desertor, -oris, *m.*, deserter.
desiderium, -i, *n.*, want, need; request, petition.
desidia, -ae, *f.*, sloth.
desisto, -ere, -stiti, withdraw, stop, cease.
destino (1), intend.
destituo, -ere, -ui, -utum, fail, disappoint.
desum, -esse, -fui, am lacking, am wanting.
deterior, -ius, *gen.* **deterioris**, worse.
detraho, -ere, -traxi, -ctum, drag from; tear off.
detritus, -a, -um, worn out.
deus, -i, *m.*, god.
dexter, -tra, -trum, right-hand.
dextra, -ae, *f.*, right hand; pledge.
Diana, -ae, *f.*, Diana.
dico, -ere, dixi, dictum, say; **dicere causam**, to be a defendant, to be upon trial.
dictum, -i, *n.*, word.
dies, -ei, *m.*, day.
differo, -ferre, distuli, dilatum, put off.
diffugio, -ere, -fugi, flee, scatter.
dignitas, -atis, *f.*, high rank, prestige; honour.
dignus, -a, -um, worthy.
digredior, -i, -gressus, depart.
dilatio, -onis, *f.*, postponement.
diligens, -entis, attentive.
diligenter, *adv.*, carefully.

- dimitto**, -ere, -misi, -missum, send away; let go; send, thrust.
diripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, plunder.
discindo, -ere, -cidi, -cissum, tear in pieces.
disciplina, -ae, *f.*, system (*of farming*); discipline.
discordo (1), mutiny.
discrimen, -inis, *n.*, distinction.
disicio, -ere, -ieci, iectum, scatter.
dissero, -ere, -serui, -sertum, speak.
dissimilis, -e, unlike.
dissimulo (1), conceal.
dissocio (1), divide off.
distraho, -ere, -traxi, -tractum, settle (*of dispute*).
diu, *adv.*, for a long time; *comp.* diutius.
diurnus, -a, -um, daily.
diversus, -a, -um, different; **e diverso**, on the other hand.
dives, divitis, wealthy.
divinus, -a, -um, of the gods, divine.
divitiae, -arum, *f. pl.*, riches, wealth.
divorsus (= **diversus**), opposite, contrary.
divus, -a, -um, deified.
do, dare, **ædi**, **datum**, give, grant, appoint; *with poenam*, pay; **se dare**, to abandon oneself.
doctus, -a, -um, skilled (in).
doleo (2), hurt (*intrans.*).
dolium, -i, *n.*, cask.
dolor, -oris, *m.*, grief.
domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress.
dominus, -i, *m.*, owner, master, arbiter.
domo, -are, -ui, -itum, tame.
domus, -us, *f.*, house; home; *loc.* **domi**, at home.
donec, *conj.*, until.
dono (1), give.
donum, -i, *n.*, gift.
dormio (4), sleep.
dorsum, -i, *n.*, ridge.
Drusus, -i, *m.*, Drusus.
dubito (1), doubt.
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful; **in dubio**, in jeopardy.
duco (3), marry (*man as subject*); *pass (of time)*.
dudum, *adv.*, *with iam*, this long time, for some time.
dum, *conj.*, while, provided that.
duo, -ae, -o, *num. adj.*, two.
durus, -a, -um, hard.
dux, ducis, *m.*, leader.
e, *see ex*.
eburneus, -a, -um, of ivory.
edo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, utter, give.
effero, -ferre, **extuli**, **elatum**, carry out.
effetus, -a, -um, worn out by child-bearing.
efficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, do; cause; am engaged on (*Cato*).
effrango, -ere, -fregi, -fractum, break open.
effundo, -ere, -fudi, -fusum, *in pass.*, stream out (*Tacitus 99*).
egestas, -atis, *f.*, need, poverty.
ego, mei, *plur. nos*, I.
egredior, -i, -gressus, go out or forth.
egregius, -a, -um, noble; outstanding; exceptional.

eicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, thrust out.
eiusmodi, of that type, such.
elaboro (1), work upon.
elido, -ere, -si, -sum, dash up (*trans.*).
eloquentia, -ae, *f.*, eloquence.
emax, -acis, prone to buy, a buyer.
emeritus, -i, *m.*, discharged soldier, veteran.
emineo (2), project.
emo, -ere, **emi**, **emptum**, buy.
enatus, -a, -um, born; natural.
enim, *conj.*, for.
enitesco (3), shine forth.
eo, ire, ii, **itum**, go.
eo, *adv.*, thither, there; to such a point or pitch.
eo, *adv.*, for that reason, on this (or that) account.
Ephesius, -a, -um, Ephesian.
epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter.
eques, -itis, *m.*, knight; *in pl.*, cavalry.
equidem, *adv.*, indeed, truly, surely.
equus, -i, *m.*, horse.
ergo, *adv.*, therefore.
eripio, -ere, -ui, -eptum, rescue.
error, -oris, *m.*, mistake.
erubesco, -ere, -rubui, blush.
erumpo, -ere, -rupi, -ruptum, burst or sally forth.
esto, *imperat. of sum*.
esurio (4), am hungry.
et, *conj.*, and, also; **et . . . et**, both . . . and.
etiam, *adv.*, also, even.
etiamsi, *conj.*, even if.
etsi, *conj.*, although.
Eurythmus, -i, *m.*, Eurythmus.

evenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, happen, occur, befall.
evertō, -ere, -ti, -sum, overthrow, ruin.
evoco (1), summon.
ex, *prep. with abl.*, out of, from; of; in accordance with.
exanimis, -e, lifeless.
exauctoro (1), cashier, break.
exaudio (4), hear.
excelsus, -a, -um, high, lofty.
excipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, receive.
excubiae, -arum, *f. pl.*, keeping watch; a watch.
excultus, -a, -um, *perf. part. pass. of excolo*, adorned.
excutio, -ere, -ussi, -ussum, sift.
exemplum, -i, *n.*, example.
exeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, go out, get out.
exerceo (2), keep busy.
exercitus, -us, *m.*, army.
exigo, -ere, -egi, -actum, complete; use up (*Cato*); demand back.
eximius, -a, -um, outstanding, exceptional.
existimo (1), think, consider.
exitium, -i, *n.*, destruction.
exitus, -us, *m.*, end, death.
exopto (1), long for.
expedio (4), contrive.
expergiscor, -i, -perrectus, wake up.
experior, -iri, -pertus, test, experience.
expers, -tis, devoid of.
expinso (3), grind.
exporto (1), carry out.
exposco, -ere, -poposci, implore, demand.

- expostulo** (1), demand.
exprimo, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, extort.
exprobro (1), show with indignation.
exsequiae, -arum, *f. pl.*, cortege, funeral procession.
exsilio, -ire, -silui, leap up.
exspecto (1), wait for.
extruo *or* **extruo**, -ere, -uxi, -uctum, erect.
externus, -a, -um, foreign; *as noun*, foreigner.
exterus, -a, -um, foreign.
extraho, -ere, -axi, -actum, draw out.
extremus, -a, -um, outermost; *in extremo*, in extreme peril.
extrudo, -ere, -si, -sum, thrust out, drive away.

facetiae, -arum, *f. pl.*, humour.
facilis, -e, easy; *adv.*, **facile**, easily; readily (*Sallust*); *compar.*, **facilius**.
facilitas, -atis, *f.*, affability.
facinus, -oris, *n.*, deed, crime.
facio, -ere, feci, factum, do, make; hold; act; offer; work; see to it; commit; value; perform.
factio, -onis, *f.*, factiousness.
factiosus, -a, -um, seditious.
factum, -i, *n.*, deed; what has (had) been done.
facundia, -ae, *f.*, eloquence.
falsus, -a, -um, false, forged.
fama, -ae, *f.*, reputation, fame.
familia, -ae, *f.*, household.
familiaris, -e, of the household.
Fannia, -ae, *f.*, Fannia.
far, farris, *n.*, spelt.

farina, -ae, *f.*, flour.
fas, *n. indecl.*, divine law, right.
fateor, -eri, fassus, own, confess.
fauces, -ium, *f. pl.*, throat.
faveo, -ere, favi, fautum, prosper, bless (+ *dative*).
fax, facis, *f.*, torch.
felicitas, -atis, *f.*, good fortune.
femina, -ae, *f.*, woman.
fere, *adv.*, practically; hardly.
feriae, -arum, *f. pl.*, festival.
fero, ferre, tuli, latum, take, convey, bear; endure, laud, suggest, prompt, say.
ferox, -ocis, full of fight (*Sallust*); spirited.
ferramentum, -i, *n.*, tool.
ferrum, -i, *n.*, steel, sword.
festinatio, -onis, *f.*, haste.
festus, -a, -um, holy.
fides, -ei, *f.*, good faith; promise; honour; pledge, protection, plausibility.
fidus, -a, -um, faithful.
filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.
filius, -ii, *m.*, son.
finio (4), finish.
finis, -is, *m.*, end, boundary, frontier.
fio, fieri, factus, am done, become; happen; am under construction.
firmo (1), strengthen, stiffen.
flagrans, -ntis, vehement.
flagro (1), burn, am in flames.
flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame.
fletus, -us, *m.*, weeping.
florens, -ntis, blooming.
flos, floris, *m.*, flower.
fluctus, -us, *m.*, wave.
focillo (1), bring round, resuscitate.

focus, -i, *m.*, hearth.
fodio, -ere, -fodi, **fossum**, dig.
foedus, -eris, *n.*, treaty.
foedus, -a, -um, loathsome, foul;
 disgraceful.
foras, *adv.*, out.
fore = **futurus esse**.
foris, *adv.*, abroad, outside.
forma, -ae, *f.*, beauty.
formidulosus, -a, -um, full of
 terrors.
fors, **fortis**, *f.*, chance.
fortis, -e, brave, gallant (*Cicero*).
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortitudo, -inis, *f.*, courage.
fortuna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, wealth.
forum, -i, *n.*, assize town (*Cicero*).
fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch.
fragor, -oris, *m.*, roaring.
frango, -ere, -fregi, **fractum**,
 break.
frater, -ris, *m.*, brother.
freno (1), curb.
frequens, -entis, crowded.
frequento (1), visit in crowds,
 flock to.
fructus, -us, *m.*, yield.
frumentarius, -a, -um, grain-
 growing; grain (*as adj.*).
frumentum, -i, *n.*, corn, grain.
frustra, *adv.*, in vain.
frustror (1), cheat.
fugio, -ere, fugi, flee.
fulgor, -oris, *m.*, brightness,
 sheen, brilliance.
funditus, *adv.*, utterly.
fundus, -i, *m.*, farm.
fungor, -i, **functus**, perform (*with*
abl.).
funis, -is, *m.*, rope.
funus, -eris, *n.*, funeral.
fur, -is, *m.*, robber.

furia, -ae, *f.*, a Fury.
furor, -oris, *m.*, madness, frenzy.
futurus, -a, -um, *future partic.*
 of **sum**.

Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic.
gallina, -ae, *f.*, hen.
Gallitta, -ae, *f.*, Gallitta.
Gallus, -a, -um, a Gaul.
gaudium, -ii, *n.*, joy.
Gelensis, -e, of Gela.
gemitus, -us, *m.*, groaning.
gener, -eri, *m.*, son-in-law.
genetrix, -icis, *f.*, Genetrix (*a*
title of Venus—'Mother').
gens, -tis, *f.*, race, nation.
genu, -us, *n.*, knee.
genus, -eris, *n.*, birth, race.
Germanicus, -i, *m.*, Germanicus.
gero, -ere, gessi, **gestum**, wage.
gesto (1), brandish.
gestus, -us, *m.*, gesture.
gigno, -ere, genui, **genitum**,
 breed.
gladiator, -oris, *m.*, gladiator.
gladius, -ii, *m.*, sword.
glandarius, -a, -um, yielding
 acorns.
globus, -i, *m.*, band, company.
gloria, -ae, *f.*, glory.
glorior (1), take pride.
grandis, -e, big, large.
graphium, -ii, *n.*, stylus.
gratia, -ae, *f.*, acknowledgment
 (*Cato*); indulgence (*Sallust*);
 favour (*Tacitus*).
gratulatio, -onis, *f.*, gratitude.
gratus, -a, -um, pleasing.
gravitas, -atis, *f.*, dignity, solem-
 nity.
graviter, *adv.*, bitterly.
gregarius, -a, -um, common.

gremium, -ii, *n.*, bosom.

habeo (2), have, hold, consider;
keep; **orationem habere**, make
a speech; **pro certo habeo**, am
assured.

habitus, -us, *m.*, attire, bearing.

hariolus, -i, *m.*, fortune-teller.

haruspex, -icis, *m.*, soothsayer.

Hasdrubal, -is, *m.*, Hasdrubal.

hasta, -ae, *f.*, spear, lance.

haud, *adv.*, not.

haurio, -ire, -si, -stum, drain.

Helvius, -i, *m.*, Helvius (Cinna).

hercule, *interj.*, by Hercules.

heres, -edis, *c.*, heir, heiress.

hesternus, -a, -um, of yesterday.

hic, **haec**, **hoc**, this; he, she, it;
pl., they.

hic, *adv.*, here.

hice, *emphatic form of hic*, this.

hinc, *adv.*, here, from here.

Hispania, -ae, *f.*, Spain.

Hispanus, -a, -um, Spanish; *as*
noun, Spaniard.

histrionalis, -e, of an actor.

homo, -inis, *m.*, man, human
being.

honeste, *adv.*, decently.

honestus, -a, -um, creditable;
virtuous.

honos, -oris, *m.*, honour, office;
respect.

hora, -ae, *f.*, hour.

horridus, -a, -um, rough, un-
civilised.

hortus, -i, *m.*, garden.

hospes, -itis, *c.*, host, guest.

hospitium, -i, *n.*, hospitality;
tie of friendship.

hostia, -ae, *f.*, victim.

hostilis, -e, hostile.

hostis, -is, *c.*, enemy.

humanitas, -atis, *f.*, kindness.

iaceo (2), lie.

iacio, -ere, **ieci**, **iactum**, throw,
hurl.

iacto (1), discuss.

iaculum, -i, *n.*, dart.

iam, *adv.*, now; at once; already.

ibi, *adv.*, there.

ictus, -us, *m.*, blow.

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, the same.

ideo, *adv.*, for that reason.

idoneus, -a, -um, suitable.

Idus, -uum, *f. pl.*, the Ides.

igitur, *conj.*, therefore, then.

ignarus, -a, -um, ignorant.

ignavia, -ae, *f.*, cowardice.

ignoro (1), am unaware.

ignosco, -ere, -ovi, -otum, *with*
dat., pardon, forgive.

ilico, *adv.*, straightway.

illatus, -a, -um, *see infero*.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, that; he, she it;
they.

illic, *adv.*, there.

illustris, -e, distinguished.

Illyricum, -i, *n.*, Illyricum.

imber, -bris, *m.*, rain.

imitor (1), imitate.

immensus, -a, -um, unmeasured;
in immensum, to an immense
height.

immineo (2), overhang, overlook;
threaten (*with dat.*—*Tacitus*).

immitto, -ere, -misi, -misum,
loose against.

immo, *adv.*, on the contrary.

immoderatus, -a, -um, undisci-
plined.

immortalis, -e, immortal, death-
less.

impavide, *adv.*, fearlessly.
imperator, -oris, *m.*, general; *in Tacitus*, emperor.
imperium, -i, *n.*, empire, rule; command; order.
impero (1), order; requisition.
impetro (1), *intrans.*, get one's way; *trans.*, obtain.
impetus, -us, *m.*, attack, violence.
impingo, -ere, -pegi, **pactum**, dash, dash upon.
impleo, -ere, -plevi, -pletum, satisfy.
imploro (1), implore, appeal to; call upon.
impono, -ere, -posui, -positum, place upon; put on board.
importuosus, -a, -um, harbourless.
improbo (1), disapprove of.
impudens, -ntis, shameless.
impune, *adv.*, unpunished.
impurus, -a, -um, filthy.
imus, -a, -um, bottom of.
in, *prep. with acc.*, to, into, against, for; *with abl.*, in, on, at, in the case of.
inanis, -e, empty, bare.
incautus, -a, -um, imprudent.
incedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, enter in.
incendium, -i, *n.*, arson.
incendo, -ere, -di, -nsum, burn, set on fire.
inceptum, -i, -n., attempt.
incertus, -a, -um, uncertain; *n. pl.*, as noun, uncertainties.
incido, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, inscribe.
incipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, begin.
incitamentum, -i, *n.*, incentive.

inclinatio, -onis, *f.*, inclining; inclination, tendency.
incolo, -ere, -lui, inhabit.
incolumis, -e, safe.
increpo, -are, -ui, -itum, chide.
incultus, -a, -um, uncultivated, wild.
inde, *adv.*, thence, from there.
index, -icis, *m.*, witness.
indicium, -i, *n.*, evidence.
indico (1), declare, disclose; betray, accuse.
indico, -ere, -dixi, -dictum, announce.
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy (*often with abl.*).
indo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, put on, put.
induco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, bring into, lead into, introduce.
indulgeo, -ere, -lsi, -ltum, grant.
induo, -ere, -ui, -utum, put on (*clothes, arms*).
industria, -ae, *f.*, diligence.
ineo, -ire, -ivi (ii), -itum, go into; enter upon (*of service*).
inertia, -ae, *f.*, idleness; indolence.
infectus, -a, -um, left undone.
infelix, -icis, unlucky.
inferior, -ius, *gen. -oris*, lower.
infero, -ferre, -tuli, **illatum**, drive in; **bellum inferre**, to make war (upon).
inferus, -a, -um, lower; *in neut. pl.*, **infera**, the underworld.
infestus, -a, -um, hostile.
infirmus, -a, -um, weak, poor.
infra, *adv.*, or *prep. with acc.*, below.
ingenium, -i, *n.*, talent.

- ingens**, -ntis, immense; deep; huge; boundless.
ingratus, -a, -um, unwelcome.
ingruo, -ere, -ui, break in, fall upon.
inicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, throw on.
inimicus, -a, -um, hostile; *or as noun*, enemy.
initium, -i, *n.*, beginning; **initio**, at the outset.
iniuria, -ae, *f.*, wrong.
iniussu, *abl. of defective noun in-*
iussus, without the orders.
innocens, -ntis, blameless.
innoxie, *adv.*, innocently.
inopinatus, -a, -um, unexpected.
inquam, **inquit**, *defective verb*, I say.
inquisitio, -onis, *f.*, enquiry.
inriguus, -a, -um, well-watered.
insanio (4), am mad.
insciens, -ntis, not knowing.
inscribo, -ere, -psi, -ptum, write on, inscribe.
insero, -ere, -serui, -sertum, put in, insert; associate.
insidiae, -arum, *f. pl.*, ambush, plot.
insignis, -e, distinguished, exceptional.
insisto, -ere, -stiti, begin.
inspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, view.
insto, -are, -stiti, press on, insist.
instrumentum, -i, *n.*, equipment.
instruo, -ere, -uxi, -uctum, fit out.
insula, -ae, *f.*, island.
insum, -esse, -fui, am in *or* present.
integer, -gra, -grum, undivided.
integritas, -atis, *f.*, integrity.
intemperanter, *adv.*, rashly.
intendo, -ere, -ndi, -ntum, hold out.
intentus, -a, -um, devoted; intent (*Tacitus*).
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among, amid.
intercipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, cut off.
interdum, *adv.*, sometimes.
interest, -esse, -fuit, it is of importance, it concerns.
interficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, kill, slay.
intericio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, interpose.
interim, *adv.*, at this moment.
interimo, -ere, -emi, -emptum, destroy, slay, kill.
intermitto, -ere, -misi, -missum, suspend.
interpono, -ere, -posui, -positum, give (*of an oath*).
interrogo (1), ask.
interrumpo, -ere, -rupi, -ruptum, interrupt.
intolerandus, -a, -um, unbearable.
intra, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, within.
intro (1), enter, appear (*in court*).
introeo, -ire, -ivi (ii), -itum, enter.
intueor (2), gaze at, behold.
invenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, find.
invidia, -ae, *f.*, envy; odium; indignation.
invitus, -a, -um, unwilling.
ipse, -a, -um, -self; very.
ira, -ae, *f.*, anger.
iratus, -a, -um, angry.

irrideo, -ere, -risi, -risum, laugh at.

irruo, -ere, -rui, rush up.

is, **ea**, **id**, that; he, she, it, they; such, *etc.*

iste, **ista**, **istud**, that of yours, that yonder.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in such a way.

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.

itaque, *adv.*, and so, accordingly.

item, *adv.*, also, likewise.

iter, **itineris**, *n.*, route, journey; street (*Suetonius*).

iterum, *adv.*, a second time.

iubeo, -ere, **iussi**, **iussum**, order.

iucundus, -a, -um, delightful.

iudex, -icis, *m.*, judge, jurymen (*Cicero*).

iudicium, -i, *n.*, court (*of law*); decision, arbitrament.

Iudaei, -orum, *m. pl.*, Jews.

iugerum, -i, *n.*, iugerum (*unit of land measurement = two thirds of English acre*).

iugulo (1), kill, slay, murder.

iugulum, -i, *n.*, throat, neck.

Julia, -ae, *f.*, Julia (*J. Caesar's daughter*).

Iulius, -a, -um, Julian; *as noun*, Julius.

iumentum, -i, *n.*, beast.

iungo, -ere, -nxi, -nctum, join, form, unite.

ius iurandum, **iuris iurandi**, *n.*, oath.

iustitia, -ae, *f.*, sense of justice.

iustitium, -i, *n.*, public mourning.

iustus, -a, -um, just.

iuvenis, -is, *m.*, young man.

iuventa, -ae, *f.*, youth.

iuxta, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, near.

Kalendae, -arum, *f. pl.*, the Kalends (*first day of the month*).

labor, -oris, *m.*, hardship, hard work.

laboro (1), toil, work.

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.

Laelius, -i, *m.*, Laelius.

laetitia, -ae, *f.*, joy, rejoicing.

laetor (1), rejoice.

lamentatio, -onis, *f.*, lament, grief, sorrow.

lamentor (1), lament.

lana, -ae, *f.*, wool.

languéo (2), weaken (*intrans.*).

languesco, -ere, -gui, grow weak or obscure.

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone.

Lar, **Laris**, *m.*, Lar, household god.

largior (4), squander, be prodigal of; give away in bribes.

lascivio (4), revel.

lassus, -a, -um, weary.

latebrae, -arum, *f. pl.*, hiding or lurking place, retreat.

latus, -a, -um, broad, wide; broad-beamed.

latus, -eris, *n.*, side, flank.

laudatio, -onis, *f.*, eulogy.

laudo (1), praise.

laus, **laudis**, *f.*, praise.

lavo, -are, -vi, **lavatum** or **lotum**, wash.

lectica, -ae, *f.*, litter.

lectus, -i, *m.*, couch, bed.

legatio, -onis, *f.*, embassy.

legatus, -i, *m.*, envoy, legate; general.

legio, -ionis, *f.*, legion.

legionarius, -a, -um, legionary.

lego, -ere, **legi**, **lectum**, read.

lenio (4), soothe, appease.
Lentulus, -i, *m.*, Lentulus.
lentus, -a, -um, lingering.
Lepidus, -i, *m.*, Lepidus.
letalis, -e, fatal, mortal.
levamentum, -i, *n.*, mitigation.
levis, -e, light.
lex, **legis**, *f.*, law; term, condition (*Tacitus*).
libellus, -i, *m.*, note.
libenter, *adv.*, *comp.* **libentius**, pleasurably, gladly, with appetite.
liber, -era, -erum, free, unfettered.
liberalis, -e, generous.
liberalitas, -atis, *f.*, generosity.
liberi, -orum, *m. pl.*, children.
libertas, -atis, *f.*, freedom.
libertus, -i, *m.*, freedman.
libet (2), it pleases; **libuit**, the wish occurred to me (*Sallust*).
libido, -inis, *f.*, appetite, passion.
licentia, -ae, *f.*, power, freedom.
licet (2), it is permitted.
Lilybaeum, -i, *n.*, Lilybaeum.
limen, -inis, *n.*, threshold.
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue; language.
lis, **litis**, *f.*, quarrel.
lito (1), obtain favourable omens.
littera, -ae, *f.*, letter (*of alphabet*); *in pl.*, letter, despatch.
litus, -oris, *n.*, shore, coast.
locatio, -onis, *f.*, contract.
loco (1), place, put; put out to contract; hire.
locus, -i, *m.*, place, room; *sometimes neut. in plur.*, parts.
longe, *adv.*, far; very.
longus, -a, -um, long.
loquor, -i, **locutus**, speak, say.
Lucilius, -i, *m.*, Lucilius.

luctus, -us, *m.*, grief.
ludi, -orum, *m. pl.*, games.
luna, -ae, *f.*, moon.
lux, **lucis**, *f.*, light.
luxuria, -ae, *f.*, extravagance.
luxoriosus, -a, -um, extravagant.
luxus, -us, *m.*, extravagance, luxury.

M. = Marcus.

maculo (1), sully.
maereo (2), grieve, mourn.
magis, *adv.*, more, rather.
magister, -tri, *m.*, master; **magister equitum**, master of the horse.
magistratus, -us, *m.*, magistrate, official.
magnificus, -a, -um, splendid.
magnitudo, -inis, *f.*, greatness, size.
magnus, -a, -um, great, big.
maiestas, -atis, *f.*, majesty, dignity.
maior, -us, *gen. maioris*, *compar. of magnus*, greater; **natu maior**, older.
maiores, -um, *m. pl.*, ancestors; elders.
male, *adv.*, badly, ill.
maleficium, -i, *n.*, crime.
malo, **malle**, **malui**, prefer.
malum, -i, *n.*, suffering.
malus, -a, -um, bad, evil, wicked.
mandatum, -i, *n.*, demand.
mando (1), entrust; give instruction.
maneo, -ere, **mansi**, **mansum**, remain, stay.
manifestus, -a, -um, caught in the act; evident.
manipularis, -is, *m.*, soldier.

mansuetudo, -inis, *f.*, gentleness.
manus, -us, *f.*, hand; band, force.
mare, maris, *n.*, sea.
maritus, -i, *m.*, husband.
Martius, -a, -um, of Mars; of March (*the month*).
Masinissa, -ae, *m.*, Masinissa.
mater, -tris, *f.*, mother.
matrimonium, -i, *n.*, wedlock.
matrona, -ae, *f.*, lady.
maxime, *superlat. adv.*, most, very greatly, chiefly, particularly.
maximus, -a, -um, greatest; (*superlat. of magnus*).
mecum, i.e. cum me.
medicus, -i, *m.*, doctor.
mediocris, -e, slight.
meditor (1), meditate; plan, devise.
medius, -a, -um, middle of.
mehercule! to be sure!
melior, -us, *gen. melioris, compar. of bonus*, better.
melius, *compar. adv.*, better.
memini, -isse, remember.
memor, -oris, mindful.
memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory, recollection.
memoro (1), tell.
mens, mentis, *f.*, mind; view (*Sallust*).
mercennarius, -i, *m.*, hired hand.
merces, -edis, *f.*, fee, money.
mereo (2), earn.
mereor (2), deserve.
meridies, *acc. -em, abl. -e, m.*, South.
meritum, -i, *n.*, good service.
Metilius, -i, *n.*, Metilius.
metuo, -ere, -ui, fear.
metus, -us, *m.*, fear.

meus, -a, -um, my.
miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier.
milia, -ium, *n. pl.*, thousands.
militaris, -e, military, soldiers'.
militia, -ae, *f.*, military service, warfare; *loc. militiae*, in the field.
mina, -ae, *f.*, threat.
minax, -acis, threatening, menacing.
minimus, -a, -um, *superlat. of parvus*, least, tiny.
minister, -tri, *m.*, servant; promoter, supporter (*Tacitus*).
minor, -us, *gen. -oris, compar. of parvus*, less.
minus, *compar. adv.*, less; often = not.
mirabilis, -e, remarkable.
mirus, -a, -um, surprising; wonderful.
misceo, -ere, -cui, -xtum, mix, mingle, confuse; excite, arouse (*Tacitus*).
miser, -era, -erum, unfortunate.
miseratio, -onis, *f.*, pity.
misereor (2), pity.
miseria, -ae, *f.*, distress, sorrow.
misericordia, -ae, *f.*, compassion, mercy.
misericors, -cordis, merciful.
missio, -onis, *f.*, discharge.
mitto, -ere, misi, missum, send despatch; utter.
mobilis, -e, changeable, inconstant, fickle.
moderatio, -onis, *f.*, restraint.
modestia, -ae, *f.*, self-discipline, restraint.
modestus, -a, -um, self-controlled.
modicus, -a, -um, modest.

- modo**, *adv.*, only; **modo . . . modo**, now . . . now.
- modus**, -i, *m.*, way, manner; sort.
- moenia**, -ium, *n. pl.*, (city) walls.
- mollitia**, -ae, *f.*, irresolution.
- moneo** (2), warn, advise.
- mons**, **montis**, *m.*, mountain.
- monumentum**, -i, *n.*, memorial, record.
- morbosus**, -a, -um, sickly.
- morior**, -i, **mortuus**, die.
- mors**, **mortis**, *f.*, death.
- mortalis**, -e, mortal; *adj. as noun*, man.
- mortifere**, *adv.*, mortally.
- mos**, **moris**, *m.*, manner, way, fashion, practice, custom; *in pl.*, morals, character.
- motus**, -us, *m.*, emotion.
- moveo**, -ere, **movi**, **motum**, move; **arma moveo**, rise up in revolt.
- mox**, *adv.*, soon.
- muliebris**, -e, womanish.
- mulier**, -is, *f.*, woman.
- multitudo**, -inis, *f.*, a great number; mob, throng, crowd.
- multo**, *adv.*, by far, much.
- multus**, -a, -um, much; *in pl.*, many.
- munde**, *adv.*, neatly, cleanly.
- munditiae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, cleaning.
- mundus**, -a, -um, neat.
- munia**, -orum, *n. pl.*, duties, functions.
- municeps**, -cipis, *m.*, fellow-townsmen.
- municipium**, -i, *n.*, provincial town.
- munificentia**, -ae, *f.*, liberality, generosity.
- munificus**, -a, -um, generous.
- munio** (4), repair, fortify.
- munus**, -eris, *n.*, gift.
- murmur**, -uris, *n.*, grumbling.
- mutō** (1), change.
- mutuor** (1), borrow.
- mutuus**, -a, -um, on loan; **mutuum dare**, lend.
- nam**, *conj.*, for.
- nascor**, -i, **natus**, am born, arise.
- natura**, -ae, *f.*, nature, disposition.
- naufragium**, -i, *n.*, shipwreck.
- nauta**, -ae, *m.*, sailor.
- navicula**, -ae, *f.*, boat.
- navigium**, -i, *n.*, vessel.
- navis**, -is, *f.*, ship, boat.
- ne**, *adv.*, not; *conj.*, lest, that . . . not; **ne . . . quidem**, not even.
- ne**, *enclitic particle to introduce direct questions; in indirect questions*, whether.
- nec**, *see neque*.
- necesse**, *only in nom. acc. sing. neut.*, essential.
- necessitas**, -atis, *f.*, force, compulsion.
- neco** (1), put to death.
- nefarius**, -a, -um, treasonable, treacherous; awful.
- nefas**, *neut. indecl.*, wrong; wicked thing.
- neglegentia**, -ae, *f.*, neglect.
- neglego**, -ere, -exi, -ectum, neglect.
- nego** (1), deny, say that . . . not.
- negotium**, -i, *n.*, affair, business; exploit.
- nemo**, *acc. neminem, gen. nullius, dat. nemini, abl. nullo*, no one, nobody.
- nempe**, *conj.*, of course.
- neptis**, -is, *f.*, grand-daughter.

neque, not, and not, but not;
neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.
nequiquam, *adv.*, in vain.
ne quis, (that) not any, (that) no.
ne quo, *adv.*, nowhither, nowhere.
Nero, -onis, *m.*, Nero.
nescio (4), know not.
neu or neve, nor, and not.
nex, *necis*, *f.*, death.
ni = **nisi**, unless.
nihil, *neut. indecl.*, nothing.
nihilo, *abl. of nihilum*, -i, *n.*,
nothing; no.
nimum, *adv.*, too much, too.
nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless.
niteo (2), shine; am prosperous.
nobilis, -e, noble, distinguished;
famous.
nobiscum = **cum nobis**.
nolo, **nolle**, **nolui**, am unwilling,
wish not; *imperat. noli*, **nolite**
+ *infin.*, do not . . .
nomen, -inis, *n.*, name; **suo no-**
mine, independently (*Cicero*).
nomino (1), mention.
non, not.
nonae, -arum, *f. pl.*, the nones
(5th or 7th of the month).
nonanus, -a, -um, of the ninth
(legion).
nonnulli, -ae, -a, some.
nonus, -a, -um, ninth.
noster, -tra, -trum, our.
nota, -ae, *f.*, mark.
novissimus, -a, -um, last.
novus, -a, -um, new; strange
(*Tacitus*).
nox, *noctis*, *f.*, night.
noxa, -ae, *f.*, guilt, fault; harm.
nubes, -is, *f.*, cloud.
nubo, -ere, **nupsi**, **nuptum** (+*dat.*)
marry (*woman as subject*).

nudus, -a, -um, naked, bare.
nullus, -a, -um, no, none, not
any.
numerus, -i, *m.*, number; *see also*
saepe.
Numida, -ae, *m.*, a Numidian.
Numidia, -ae, *f.*, Numidia.
Numidicus, -a, -um, Numidian.
nummus, -i, *m.*, coin.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nunquam, *adv.*, never.
nuntio (1), report, announce.
nuntius, -i, *m.*, news, messenger.
nuptiae, -arum, *f. pl.*, marriage.
nuptialis, -e, marriage, *as adj.*
nusquam, *adv.*, nowhere.
nuto (1), waver.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
obiaceo (2), lie in the way of
(*sometimes + dat.*).
obligo (1), bind, pledge.
oblivio, -onis, *f.*, forgetfulness;
venire in oblivionem, to forget.
obnitor, -i, -nixus or **nisus**,
struggle against; resist.
obnoxius, -a, -um, subject.
oboedio (4), *with dat.*, listen to;
obey.
oborior, -iri, -ortus, well up.
obscurus, -a, -um, unknown.
obsequium, -i, *n.*, allegiance;
obedience (*Tacitus* 184).
obsideo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum,
besiege, beset.
obsto, -are, -stiti, stand in way
of (*dat.*).
obstringo, -ere, -nxi, -ictum,
pledge.
obtendo, -ere, -di, -tum, plead
(as an excuse).
obtestor (1), pray; call to witness.

obtineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, obtain.
obtingo, -ere, -tigi, happen, befall, occur.
obtrecto (1), disparage.
obvius, -a, -um, in or on the way.
obvolvo, -ere, -vi, -utum, cover up, muffle.
occido, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, kill.
occulte, *adv.*, secretly.
occulto (1), hide, conceal.
occurro, -ere, -curri, -cursum, *with dat.*, meet.
Ocriculum, -i, *n.*, Ocriculum.
octavus, -a, -um, eighth.
oculus, -i, *m.*, eye.
odium, -i, *n.*, hatred.
odor, -oris, *m.*, odour; *in pl.*, spices.
offero, -ferre, obtuli, oblatum, bring into prominence; offer.
officio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, *with dat.*, obstruct.
officium, -i, *n.*, duty.
olearius, -a, -um, oil, *as adj.*
oletum, -i, *n.*, olive-yard.
oleum, -i, *n.*, oil.
olim, *adv.*, formerly.
omen, -inis, *n.*, omen.
omitto, -ere, -misi, -missum, pass over, abandon; give up, leave.
omnino, *adv.*, only.
omnis, -e, all, every kind of, every.
onero (1), load, burden.
onus, -eris, *n.*, load, burden.
onustus, -a, -um, laden.
opem, opis, *f.*, *nom.* not found, aid, help; *pl.*, resources.
opera, -ae, *f.*, labourer, hand; hired man (*Tacitus*).

operarius, -i, *m.*, labourer.
operio, -ire, -ui, -ertum, conceal.
opinio, -onis, *f.*, belief.
opinor (1), believe, think.
oportet (2), *impers.*, it behoves; one must.
opperior, -iri, -pertus, wait.
oppidum, -i, *n.*, town.
oppono, -ere, -posui, -positum, bring forward (*in opposition*).
optimus, -a, -um, best; excellent, worthy.
opto (1), choose, wish for.
opulentia, -ae, *f.*, wealth.
opulentus, -a, -um, powerful.
opus, operis, *n.*, work; workmanship (*Cicero*); effort, task, job; a construction; *as indecl. adj.*, necessary.
oratio, -onis, *f.*, speech.
orator, -oris, *m.*, speaker, pleader.
orbitas, -atis, *f.*, bereavement.
ordior, -iri, orsus, begin.
ordo, -inis, *m.*, order, row, rank; senate, house.
orior, -iri, ortus, arise.
ornamentum, -i, *n.*, ornament, decoration, jewel.
orno (1), equip.
oro (1), beg, entreat.
os, oris, *n.*, mouth, face.
osculum, -i, *n.*, kiss.
ostendo, -ere, -ndi, -ntum, show, reveal; point out, offer; hold out.
otium, -i, *n.*, peace; leisure.
ovis, -is, *f.*, sheep.
ovum, -i, *n.*, egg.

P. = Publius.

pabulum, -i, *n.*, fodder.
pactum, *see quo pacto*.

Pacuvius, -i, *m.*, Pacuvius.
paene, *adv.*, almost.
paenitentia, -ae, *f.*, repentance.
Paetus, -i, *m.*, Paetus.
Pannonicus, -a, -um, Pannonian, of Pannonia.
par, **paris**, equal, like; suitable, fit (*Tacitus*).
parasitus, -i, *m.*, hanger-on.
parco, -ere, **peperci**, **parsum**, with *dat.*, spare.
parens, -ntis, *m.*, parent; father.
pareo (2), with *dat.*, obey.
paries, -etis, *m.*, wall.
pario, -ere, **peperi**, **partum**, win, gain.
pariter, *adv.*, alike.
paro (1), buy; plan; get, win; arrange, prepare.
parricida, -ae, *m.*, traitor.
pars, **partis**, *f.*, part; **ex parte**, in part; **a parte**, on the side; *pl.*, **partes**, party, side; part, role; **pars . . . pars**, some . . . others.
parum, *adv.*, too little, not enough.
parvus, -a, -um, small.
pater, -tris, *m.*, father; *in pl.*, the fathers, the senate.
patientia, -ae, *f.*, complacency.
patior, -i, **passus**, suffer; allow.
patria, -ae, *f.*, one's own country or city.
patrius, -a, -um, of one's own country or city.
patro (1), accomplish.
pauci, -ae, -a, few.
paucitas, -atis, *f.*, fewness, small numbers.
paulatim, *adv.*, by degrees, gradually.
paulo, *adv.*, (by) a little.

paululum, *adv.*, a very little.
paulum, *adv.*, a little.
paupertas, -atis, *f.*, poverty.
paveo, -ere, **pavi**, am terrified (of); fear.
pax, **pacis**, *f.*, peace.
peccatum, -i, *n.*, error.
pecco (1), err.
pectus, -oris, *n.*, breast.
pecunia, -ae, *f.*, money.
pecus, **pecoris**, *n.*, cattle.
pellis, -is, *f.*, skin, hide.
pello, -ere, **pepuli**, **pulsum**, smite, affect.
penates, -ium, *m. pl.*, Penates (i.e. household gods); home.
pendeo, -ere, **pependi**, hang (*intrans.*).
pendo, -ere, **pependi**, **pensum**, value, regard.
pensum, -i, *n.*, weight.
peperi, see **pario**.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through, during; by; among; throughout, over.
perago, -ere, -egi, -actum, complete, proceed with.
percello, -ere, -culi, -culsum, throw down; discourage, dishearten.
Percennius, -i, *m.*, Percennius.
perculsus, see **percello**.
percussor, -oris, *m.*, assassin.
percutio, -ere, -cussi, -cussum, smite.
perditus, -a, -um, ruined.
perdo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, destroy.
perduco, -ere, -xi, -ctum, lead.
peregrinus, -i, *m.*, immigrant; also as *adj.*
pereo, -ire, -ivi (ii), -itum, perish, die.

- perfero**, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, deliver (message).
perficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, complete.
perfectus, -a, -um, finished, perfect.
perfodio, -ere, -fodi, -fossum, pierce.
perfugium, -i, *n.*, refuge.
pergo, -ere, **perrexi**, **perrectum**, proceed, hasten; **mori pergere**, insist upon dying.
perhorresco, -ere, -rui, tremble, shudder.
periculum, -i, *n.*, danger.
periucundus, -a, -um, very delightful.
permitto, -ere, -misi, -misum, permit.
permoveo, -ere, -movi, -motum, stir.
pernego (1), refuse.
perniciēs, -iei, *f.*, destruction.
pernotesco, -ere, -tui, become known.
perpauci, -ae, -a, very few.
perpello, -ere, -puli, drive, compel.
perpetuus, -a, -um, unbroken.
persaepe, *adv.*, very often.
perscribo, -ere, -ipsi, -iptum, state, announce.
persequor, -i, -secutus, punish (*Sallust*).
persevero (1), continue.
persuasio, -onis, *f.*, conviction.
pertimesco, -ere, -mui, fear.
pervenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, arrive.
pervetus, -eris, very ancient.
pervicacia, -ae, *f.*, inflexibility, obstinacy.
pes, **pedis**, *m.*, foot.
peſſimus, -a, -um, *superlat. of* malus, worst, very bad or evil.
pestis, -is, *f.*, bane.
peto, -ere, -ivi, -itum, seek, ask; petition; attack, make for;
petens, petitioner.
Phalaris, -idis, *m.*, Phalaris.
pico (1), tar.
pietas, -tatis, *f.*, devotion.
piget (2), it disgusts.
pila, -ae, *f.*, pile.
piscatorius, -a, -um, fishing (*as adj.*).
placeo (2), *often with dat.*, please.
plaga, -ae, *f.*, blow.
plane, *adv.*, clearly, quite; certainly.
plebs, **plebis**, *f.*, people, commons.
plerique, -aeque, -aque, very many, most.
plostrum, -i, *n.*, wagon, cart.
plurimus, -a, -um, *superlat. of* multus, very many.
pluris, *gen. of plus*, more (*with verbs of valuing*).
plus, **pluris**, *neut. in sing.*, more; *pl. plures*, -a, several.
pluvius, -a, -um, rainy.
poculum, -i, *n.*, cup.
poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty.
Poenus, -a, -um, Carthaginian; or *as noun*, a Carthaginian.
politor, -oris, *m.*, gardener.
polliceor (2), promise.
Polyclitus, -i, *m.*, Polyclitus.
pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight.
pono, -ere, **posui**, **positum**, put, place.

- popularis**, -e, popular; *as noun*, associate, partner.
populor (1), ravage, lay waste.
populus, -i, *m.*, people.
porrigo, -ere, -rexi, -rectum, extend, offer; hand over.
porta, -ae, *f.*, gate.
portendo, -ere, -di, -tum, reveal, presage, portend.
porto (1), carry.
portus, -us, *m.*, harbour, port.
posco, -ere, **poposci**, demand.
possideo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, am in possession of.
possum, **posse**, **potui**, can, am able; am powerful.
post, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, afterwards, after.
postea, *adv.*, afterwards.
postquam, *conj.*, when, after.
postremo, *adv.*, finally.
postremus, -a, -um, last; **ad postremum**, at last.
postridie, *adv.*, on the next day.
postulatum, -i, *n.*, demand, request.
postulo (1), demand, request.
potentia, -ae, *f.*, power.
potestas, -atis, *f.*, power; **in potestate esse**, submit oneself to the will of.
potius, *adv.*, rather.
praebeo (2), provide, give, lend.
praeceps, -cipitis, headlong.
praecipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, give instruction.
praecipue, *adv.*, especially.
praecipuus, -a, -um, special.
praeclarus, -a, -um, glorious, distinguished, noble.
praeco, -onis, *m.*, herald.
praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty.
praeditus, -a, -um, endowed (with).
praedium, -i, *n.*, farm.
praedo, -onis, *m.*, plunderer.
praefectus, -i, *m.*, commander.
praefero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, hold forth; offer; prefer.
praeifixus, -a, -um, fixed.
praemium, -i, *n.*, reward.
praesens, -entis, present.
praesideo, -ere, -sedi, *with dat.*, command.
praesidium, -i, *n.*, garrison.
praesto, -are, -stiti, -stitum, keep, fulfil; offer, perform.
praeter, *prep. with acc.*, beyond.
praeterea, *adv.*, besides; otherwise; moreover.
praetereo, -ire, -ivi (ii), -itum, pass over, go by.
praetextus, -a, -um, bordered; (toga) **praetexta**, toga **praetexta**.
praetor, -oris, *m.*, praetor; general.
praetorium, -i, *n.*, general's quarters, headquarters.
praetorius, -a, -um, praetorian.
pratum, -i, *n.*, meadow.
precem, -is (no *nom.*), *f.*, entreaty, prayer.
precor (1), pray.
prenso (1), lay hold of; grasp.
pretium, -i, *n.*, price.
pridem, *adv.*, long ago, long since.
pridie, *adv.*, on the day before; on the previous day.
primo, *adv.*, at first.
primores, -um, *m.*, leading men.
primus, -a, -um, first.
princeps, -cipis, *m.*, leading citizen; emperor.
principio, *adv.*, at the outset.

- principium**, -i, *n.*, beginning.
prior, -ius, *gen.* **prioris**, first, former.
priscus, -a, -um, former, of old.
pristinus, -a, -um, former.
prius, *adv.*, earlier, first.
priusquam, *conj.*, before.
privatim, *adv.*, as individuals, privately.
privatus, -a, -um, private.
pro, *prep.* with *abl.*, before, in front of; according to, in proportion to; on behalf of, in place of; **pro certo habeo**, am sure.
probatio, -onis, *f.*, evidence.
probrum, -i, *n.*, insult.
procedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, go in advance.
procurator, -oris, *m.*, financial agent, procurator.
proelium, -i, *n.*, battle, fight.
proficiscor, -i, -fectus, set out, start.
profiteor, -eri, -fessus, volunteer (*trans.*).
progredior, -i, -gressus, go forth.
prohibeo, -ere, -bui, -bitum, prevent.
prolabor, -i, -lapsus, fall.
promissum, -i, *n.*, promise.
promitto, -ere, -misi, -misum, promise.
promptus, -a, -um, ready, quick.
pronuntio (1), make a pronouncement; recite, declare.
prope, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, near; as *adv.*, almost.
propere, *adv.*, hurriedly.
propero (1), hasten.
propius, *compar.* of **prope**, as *adv.*, nearer.
- propono**, -ere, -posui, -positum, plan, propose.
propter, *prep.* with *acc.*, on account of.
propterea, *adv.*, besides.
prorumpo, -ere, -rupi, -ruptum, burst forth.
prosequor, -i, -secutus, escort.
prosilio, -ire, -ui, leap forward.
prosperere, *adv.*, successfully, favourably.
prosperus, -a, -um, favourable; good, fair.
protego, -ere, -texi, -tectum, protect.
proveho, -ere, -vexi, -vectum, carry forth or out.
provenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, succeed, prosper.
provideo, -ere, -di, -sum, take care (*Sallust*).
provincia, -ae, *f.*, province.
provisus, -us, *m.*, only in *abl.*, foreseeing.
proximus, -a, -um, last.
prudens, -entis, wise.
publice, *adv.*, as a community; publicly.
publico (1), confiscate.
publicus, -a, -um, public; **publicae litterae**, public records.
pudicitia, -ae, *f.*, chastity.
pudor, -oris, *m.*, propriety.
pugio, -ionis, *m.*, dagger.
pugno (1), fight.
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful; glorious.
pulchre, *adv.*, finely.
pulchritudo, -inis, *f.*, beauty.
purgo (1), clean, clear.
purpura, -ae, *f.*, purple.
purus, -a, -um, clean.

puto (1), go over (*of accounts*); think.

qua, *relat. adj.*, where, whereby.
quadraginta, forty.

quaero, -ere, -sivi, -situm, seek, search for; ask.

quaeso (3), beseech.

quaestor, -oris, *m.*, quaestor.

quaestuosus, -a, -um, money-making.

qualis, -e, *relat. pronoun and adj.*, as.

quam, *adv. and conj.*, how; than (*after compar.*); *with superlat. adj. or adv.*, as . . . as possible; as.

quamlibet, *adv.*, however.

quamquam or **quanquam**, *conj.*, although.

quamvis, *conj.*, although.

quando, *adv.*, when?

quantus, -a, -um, *interrog.*, how great, how much; *relat.*, as, as much as.

quartus, -a, -um, fourth.

quasi, *adv.*, as if.

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.

quemadmodum, *relat. adv.*, as.

queror, -i, **questus**, complain.

qui, **quae**, **quod**, who, which, that.

qui, **quae**, **quod**, *interrog. adj.*, which, what.

qui, **quae**, **quod**, *indefn. adj.*, any.

quia, *conj.*, because.

qui-, **quae-**, **quodcumque**, who-, which-, whatever.

quidam, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, a certain, a sort of; *pl.*, certain, some.

quidem, *adv.*, indeed; **ne** . . . **quidem**, not even.

quies, -etis, *f.*, quiet.

quiesco, -ere, -evi, -etum, sleep.

quietus, -a, -um, calm, peaceful.

quin, *conj.*, but that, that . . . not, without; *as adv.*, nay, why . . . not (*Tacitus* 178).

quin etiam, moreover.

quingensimus, -a, -um, fiftieth.

quintadecumani, -orum, *m. pl.*, men of the xvth legion.

quintus, -a, -um, fifth.

quippe, *conj.*, for.

quis, **quid**, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what?

quis, **qua**, **quid**, *indefn. pron.*, anyone, anything.

quisquam, **quidquam** or **quicquam**, anyone, anything; *also as adj.*, any.

quisque, **quaeque**, **quidque**, each, every.

quisquis, **quidquid** (**quicquid**), whoever, whatever.

quo, *interrog. and relative adv.*, whither, into which, where.

quo, *conj.* used to introduce final clauses containing comparatives, in order that.

quod, *conj.*, because, that.

quom = **cum**.

quominus, that not, from (*after verbs of hindering and preventing*).

quomodo, *adv.*, how.

quondam, *adv.*, formerly, once.

quoniam, *conj.*, since, as.

quo pacto, how.

quoque, *adv.*, also, too.

quotiens, *adv.*, (as often) as, whenever.

quousque, *adv.*, how long.


- radix**, -icis, *f.*, root; sub radice, at the foot.
- rapio**, -ere, -ui, -ptum, hurry.
- raptus**, -a, -um, snatched, hurried.
- ratio**, -onis, *f.*, reckoning, number, account; reason (*Tacitus*); **rationem inire**, make a calculation.
- ratus**, *see* reor.
- rea**, -ae, *f.*, (*female*) defendant.
- receptaculum**, -i, *n.*, place of refuge.
- recido**, -ere, -di, -sum, cut.
- recipio**, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, receive; admit; take possession of.
- recito** (1), read aloud.
- reclamo** (1), oppose.
- recludo**, -ere, -di, -sum, reveal.
- recordatio**, -onis, *f.*, recollection.
- recte**, *adv.*, properly; *compar.*, **rectius**, more rightly; **rectius valere**, be in better health.
- recupero** (1), recover.
- reddo**, -ere, -didi, -ditum, give back, restore.
- redeo**, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, go back, return.
- redintegro** (1), renew.
- reditus**, -us, *m.*, return.
- refero**, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, *with gratiam*, make; recall; restore (*Tacitus* 186); carry back, count, turn back *or* round, repeat (*Tacitus* 150).
- refert**, *impers.*, it concerns, it is of importance.
- regia**, -ae, *f.*, palace.
- regio**, -onis, *f.*, district
- regius**, -a, -um, royal.
- regnum**, -i, *n.*, kingdom.
- reicio**, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, refer.
- relego** (1), banish.
- religio**, -onis, *f.*, sanctity, reverence; religious scruple *or* feeling; *in pl.*, religious sanctions; (*in Suetonius*) portents.
- relinquo**, -ere, -liqui, -lictum, leave.
- reliquus**, -a, -um, left, remaining.
- remedium**, -i, *n.*, remedy.
- remex**, -igis, *m.*, rower.
- remisse**, *adv.*, slackly.
- remissio**, -onis, *f.*, relaxation.
- removeo**, -ere, -movi, -motum, dismiss, get rid of.
- renuntio** (1), report.
- renuo**, -ere, -ui, refuse.
- reor**, reri, ratus, think.
- repello**, -ere, reppuli, repulsum, drive back, repel.
- repente**, *adv.*, suddenly.
- repentinus**, -a, -um, sudden.
- reperio**, -ire, repperi, repertum, learn, discover.
- repeto**, -ere, -ivi, -itum, seek again.
- repono**, -ere, -posui, -positum, replace, set up again.
- reporto** (1), bring back.
- reprehensio**, -onis, *f.*, reproach.
- reputo** (1), think over, ponder, reflect upon.
- requiesco**, -ere, -evi, -etum, find rest, recover.
- requiro**, -ere, -sivi, -situm, look for.
- res**, rei, *f.*, thing, affair; deed; case; situation; quality (*Salust*); means.
- rescindo**, -ere, -scidi, -scissum, revoke, cancel.
- res divina**, *f.*, sacrifice.

res gestae, *f. pl.*, achievements.
respondeo, -ere, -di, -sum, answer, reply.
responsum, -i, *n.*, answer, reply.
respublica, **reipublicae**, *f.*, state, country, republic.
restituo, -ere, -ui, -utum, restore, re-establish.
resto, -are, -stiti, am left, remain.
retardo (1), hinder.
retineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, keep, hold; keep back, retain.
reus, -i, *m.*, defendant.
reveho, -ere, -vexi, -vectum, carry back.
reverentia, -ae, *f.*, respect.
revertor, -i, -versus, (*pf. usually reverti, act.*), return.
revoco (1), call back, arrogate, lay claim to.
rex, **regis**, *m.*, king.
Robustus, -i, *m.*, Robustus.
rogito (1), ask repeatedly, keep asking.
rogo (1), ask.
rogus, -i, *m.*, pyre.
Roma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.
Romanus, -a, -um, Roman; as *noun*, a Roman.
rostrum, -i, *n.*, ship's beak or ram; *in pl.*, the Rostra (*a platform*).
rubor, -oris, *m.*, blush.
rumor, -oris, *m.*, report.
runco (1), root out.
rursus, *adv.*, again; on the other hand (*Sallust*).
rusticus, -a, -um, of the country, agricultural.

sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred.
sacrifico (1), sacrifice.

sacrum, -i, *n.*, rite.
saeculum, -i, *n.*, century.
saepe, *adv.*, often; **saepe numero** (*also written as one word*), repeatedly.
sagacitas, -atis, *f.*, shrewdness.
sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow.
salictum, -i, *n.*, osier-bed.
salubris, -e, healthy.
salus, -utis, *f.*, safety.
salutaris, -e, beneficial.
saluto (1), greet.
salvus, -a, -um, safe.
sancte, *adv.*, reverently, devoutly.
sane, *adv.*, of course, to be sure, very, quite; *with negative*, absolutely.
sanguis, -uinis, *m.*, blood.
sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom.
sapio, -ere, -ivi, know.
sarcina, -ae, *f.*, burden.
sarcio, -ire, -rsi, **sartum**, mend, splice.
satio (1), sate.
satis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently.
satus, -us, *m.*, sowing.
saxeus, -a, -um, rocky.
saxum, -i, *n.*, stone.
scaenicus, -a, -um, of the stage.
Scaurus, -i, *m.*, Scaurus.
sceleratus, -a, -um, criminal; *also as noun*, a criminal.
scelestus, -a, -um, criminal (*as adj.*).
scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, sin.
scilicet, *adv.*, of course.
scio (4), know.
Scipio, -onis, *m.*, Scipio.
scribo, -ere, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, write.
Scribonianus, -i, *m.*, Scribonianus.

- se** or **sese**, him-, her-, itself; themselves; **secum**, with one-self, in one's own mind.
secessus, -us, *m.*, retirement.
secretum, -i, *n.*, a place apart.
secundus, -a, -um, second.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sedecim, sixteen.
sedes, -is, *f.*, seat, abode, home (*Cicero*); place, spot.
seditio, -onis, *f.*, revolt.
sedulo, *adv.*, busily.
seges, -etis, *f.*, seed for sowing.
Segesta, -ae, *f.*, Segesta.
Segestani, -orum, *m. pl.*, people of Segesta.
semel, *adv.*, once.
semen, -inis, *n.*, seed.
semet, *stronger form of reflexive pronoun se*.
semper, *adv.*, always.
Sempronius, -i, *m.*, Sempronius.
senatus, -us, *m.*, senate.
Senecio, -onis, *m.*, Senecio.
senex, **senis**, *m.*, old man; *as adj.*, old.
sensim, *adv.*, gradually.
sententia, -ae, *f.*, opinion, proposal; sentence; advice.
sentio, -ire, **sensi**, **sensum**, perceive, realise.
separatim, *adv.*, individually.
sepelio, -ire, -ivi, **sepultum**, bury.
septimus, -a, -um, seventh.
sepultura, -ae, *f.*, burial.
sequor, -i, **secutus**, follow.
sermo, -onis, *m.*, talk, conversation.
servio, (4), am a slave.
servitium, -i, *n.*, slavery.
servo (1), keep, observe; look after; save.
servulus, -i, *m.*, boy-slave; common slave (*Suetonius*).
servus, -i, *m.*, slave.
sese = **se**.
set = **sed**.
severitas, -atis, *f.*, austerity; severity (*Tacitus*).
severus, -a, -um, serious.
sextus, -a, -um, sixth.
si, if; **sin**, but if.
sic, *adv.*, thus, so, in this manner.
siccus, -a, -um, dry.
Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily.
Siculi, -orum, *m. pl.*, the Sicilians.
sicut or **sicuti**, just as.
sidus, -eris, *n.*, star.
signum, -i, *n.*, statue, sign; standard.
silentium, -i, *n.*, silence.
silva, -ae, *f.*, wood.
simplicitas, -atis, *f.*, informality.
simul, *adv.*, at the same time, once and for all; together, along with.
simulacrum, -i, *n.*, image, statue, model.
simulo (1), pretend.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
singularis, -e, outstanding.
singulatim, *adv.*, individually.
singuli, -ae, -a, one each; *as adv.*, severally.
sinister, -tra, -trum, left-hand, left.
sino, -ere, **sivi**, **situm**, allow.
sinus, -us, *m.*, bosom; curve; lap.
siquis, **siquid**, *indefin. pron. with si*, whoever, whatever.
Sirpicus, -i, *m.*, Sirpicus.
situs, -a, -um, situated, placed.
sobrius, -a, -um, sober.
societas, -atis, *f.*, alliance.

- socius**, -a, -um, allied; *as noun*, ally; *pl.*, subject peoples. 
socordia, -ae, *f.*, sloth.
solacium, -i, *n.*, consolation.
solatium (=solacium), -i, *n.*, comfort, solace.
soleo, -ere, **solitus**, *semi-dep.*, am accustomed.
solidus, -a, -um, solid.
solitus, -a, -um, accustomed, wonted, usual.
sollicitus, -a, -um, on the alert; anxious.
solum, -i, *n.*, soil.
solum, *adv.*, only.
solus, -a, -um, alone.
solvo, -ere, -vi, **solutum**, loose.
sonus, -i, *m.*, sound.
spatium, -i, *n.*, distance.
species, -ei, *f.*, form; pretence, appearance.
specto (r), look, face.
sperno, -ere, **sprevi**, **spretum**, scorn.
spes, **spei**, *f.*, hope.
spina, -ae, *f.*, thorn.
spiritus, -us, *m.*, life.
splendidus, -a, -um, distinguished.
sponte sua, of (one's) own accord.
Spurinna, -ae, *m.*, Spurinna.
statio, -onis, *f.*, picket, sentry.
statim, *adv.*, at once.
statuo, -ere, -ui, -utum, decide; erect.
status, -us, *m.*, position.
sterculinum, -i, *n.*, midden; dung-heap.
stercus, -oris, *n.*, dung.
sterno, -ere, **stravi**, **stratum**, cover.
- stimulus**, -i, *m.*, sting.
stipendium, -i, *n.*, pay; (military) service.
sto, -are, **steti**, **statum**, stand.
stola, -ae, *f.*, long robe.
strenue, *adv.*, energetically.
strenuus, -a, -um, active.
strepo, -ere, -ui, clamour; raise a din.
stringo, -ere, -inxi, -ictum, draw.
studium, -i, *n.*, passion; enthusiasm.
stulte, *adv.*, foolishly.
suavitas, -atis, *f.*, agreeableness.
sub, *prep. with abl.*, beneath, under.
subeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, undergo, suffer.
subicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, put under, light (a flame).
subitus, -a, -um, sudden.
sublevo (r), relieve.
subsellium, -i, *n.*, bench.
substituo, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum, lay under.
succendo, -ere, -ndi, -nsum, set fire to.
succinctus, -a, -um, girt (*with swords*).
sufficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, am sufficient, long enough.
suffundo, -ere, -fudi, -fusum, spread over.
sum, **esse**, **fui**, am.
summus, -a, -um, last; highest, deepest, greatest, utmost.
sumo, -ere, -mpsi, -mptum, exact; take.
sumptuosus, -a, -um, costly; costly to work (*Cato*).
super, *adv. and prep. with acc. and abl.*, upon, over.

superbio (4), am haughty or proud.

superbus, -a, um, arrogant.

supero (1), overcome.

supersedeo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, preside over; settle.

superstitio, -onis, f., superstition.

supersum, -esse, -fui, am left over.

supervenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, arrive immediately after; come upon the scene.

supervivo, -ere, -vixi, outlive, survive.

supplex, -icis, suppliant, of entreaty; as noun, a suppliant.

supplicium, -i, n., punishment; prayer.

supplico (1), pray.

supra, adv. and prep. with acc., above.

suptilis, -e, fine.

surgo, -ere, -rexī, -rectum, rise.

suscipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, undertake; **scelus suscipere**, perpetrate a crime.

suspectus, -a, -um, suspected, mistrusted.

suspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, look up to, advise, respect, honour.

suspicio, -onis, f., suspicion.

suspikor (1), suspect.

suspiritus, -us, m., sighing.

sustento (1), sustain.

sustineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, support; make possible.

suus, -a, -um, his, her, its; their own.

Syphax, -acis, m., Syphax.

T. = Titus.

tabernaculum, -i, n., tent.

tabula, -ae, f., picture.

taeter, -tra, -trum, hideous.

talis, -e, such.

tam, so; as; **tam . . . quam**, as much . . . as.

tamen, adv., nevertheless, yet.

tametsi, conj., although.

tamquam, adv., as though; as it were.

tandem, adv., at last.

tantum, adv., only, merely.

tantus, -a, -um, so great, so much, such great.

tardo (1), delay, stop (*trans.*).

tardus, -a, -um, slow.

taurus, -i, m., bull.

tegmen, -inis, n., covering, clothes.

tego, -ere, **texi**, **tectum**, hide.

temerarius, -a, -um, reckless, bold.

temere, adv., rashly.

temperantia, -ae, f., control; self-control.

temperi, adv., in good time.

tempestas, -atis, f., weather; time, period.

templum, -i, n., temple.

tempto (1), try, test.

tempus, -oris, n., time.

tendo, -ere, **tetendi**, **tentum**, stretch; hasten, endeavour, strive.

tenebrae, -arum, f. pl., darkness, gloom.

teneo, -ere, **tenui**, hold, keep; (*in Cicero*), deter; **memoria tenere**, remember.

tentorium, -i, n., tent.

tergeo, -ere, -si, -sum, clean.

tergum, -i, n., back.

terra, -ae, *f.*, land.
 terreo (2), terrify, frighten.
 terror, -oris, *m.*, fear.
 tertius, -a, -um, third.
 theatralis, -e, of *or* in the theatre.
 Thrasea, -ae, *m.*, Thrasea.
 Tiberis, -is, *m.*, Tiberis.
 Tiberius, -i, *m.*, Tiberius.
 tibicen, -inis, *m.*, flute-player;
 musician.
 timeo (2), fear.
 timidus, -a, -um, fearful.
 tiro, -onis, *m.*, recruit.
 Tiro, -onis, *m.*, Tiro.
 toga, -ae, *f.*, toga.
 tolero (1), support, endure.
 tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatum,
 raise; remove, destroy.
 torculus, -a, -um, for extracting
 by pressure.
 tot, *indecl.*, so many.
 totiens, *adv.*, so often.
 totus, -a, -um, whole, the whole
 of.
 trado, -ere, -didi, -ditum, give up;
 hand over, deliver; relate.
 traho, -ere, -xi, -ctum, drag off.
 traicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, run
 through, stab.
 transeo, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, go
 over, cross.
 transfero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum,
 shift, remove.
 trepidatio, -onis, *f.*, agitation.
 trepido (1), tremble.
 tres, tria, *gen.*, trium, three.
 tribunal, -alis, *n.*, judgment seat;
 platform.
 tribunus, -i, *m.*, tribune; *militum*
 tribunus, military tribune.
 tribuo, -ere, -ui, -utum, assign.
 triennium, -i, *n.*, three years.

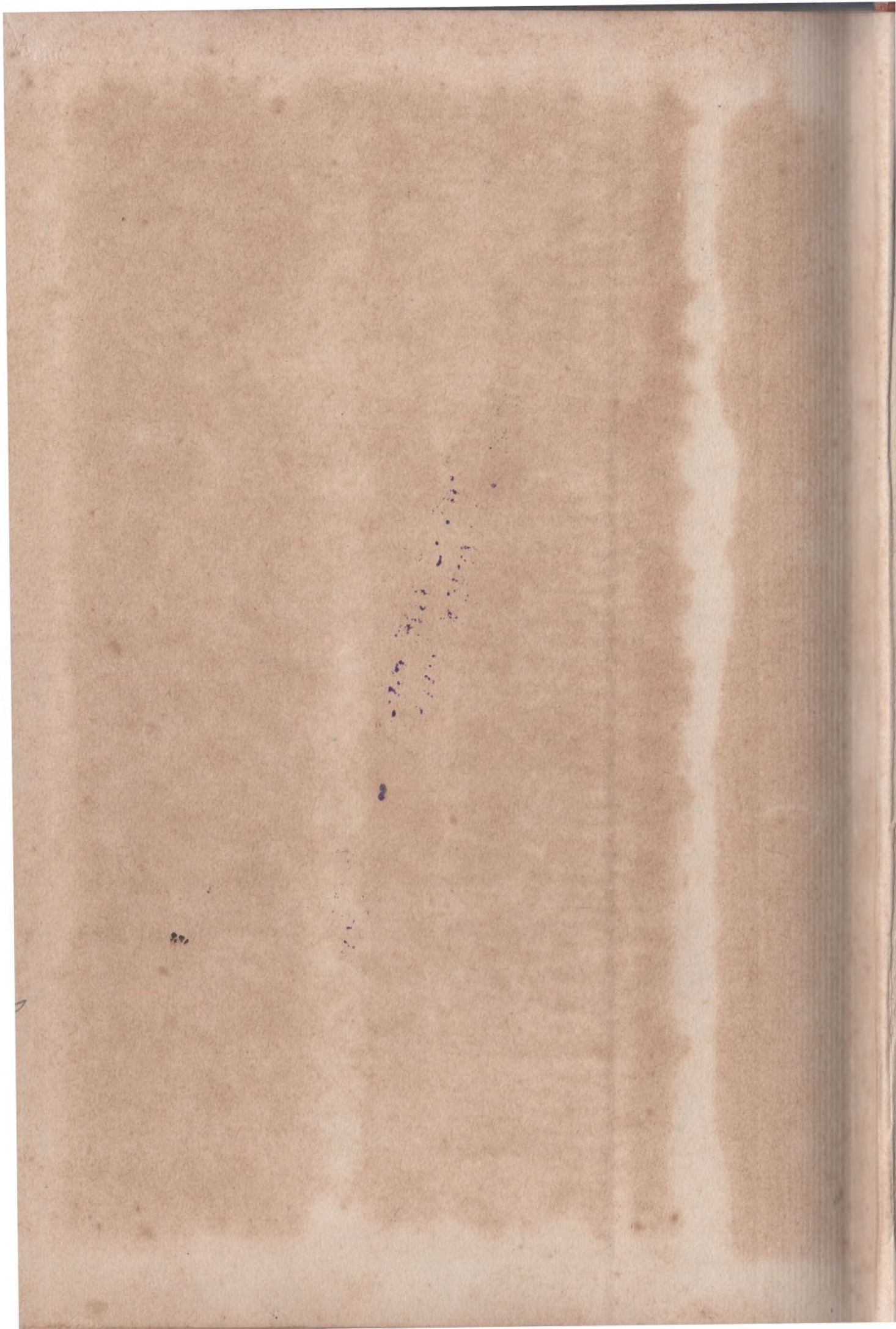
tristis, -e, gloomy, sad.
 triumphus, -i, *m.*, triumph.
 Troia, -ae, *f.*, Troy.
 tropaeum, -i, *n.*, pillar.
 trucido (1), murder, butcher.
 truculentus, -a, -um, fierce.
 tu, te, *etc.*, you.
 tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet.
 tueor (2), protect, defend.
 tum, *adv.*, then, at that time;
 thereupon.
 tumultus, -i, *m.*, uproar.
 tumulus, -i, *m.*, tomb.
 turba, -ae, *f.*, mob, crowd; tumult
 (*Tacitus* 47).
 turbo (1), disturb.
 turpis, -e, evil.
 tus, turis, *m.*, incense.
 tutus, -a, -um, safe.
 tuus, -a, -um, your.
 tyrannus, -i, *m.*, tyrant.
 ubi, *interrog. and relat. adv.*,
 when, where, wherein.
 ullus, -a, -um, any.
 ultimus, -a, -um, last.
 ultio, -onis, *f.*, punishment.
 ultra, *adv. and prep. with acc.*,
 further, beyond.
 ultro, *adv.*, actually.
 umerus, -i, *m.*, shoulder.
 una, *adv.*, together.
 unde, *adv.*, whence; from which.
 undique, *adv.*, on every side, on
 all sides.
 ungo (*or* unguo), -ere, unxi,
 unctum, anoint.
 unguentum, -i, *n.*, ointment,
 perfume.
 universus, -a, -um, all, all to-
 gether.
 unquam, *adv.*, ever.

unus, -a, -um, one; alone.
urbanus, -a, -um, of or in the city.
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.
urgeo, -ere, ursi, press.
usque, *adv.*, as far as, up to.
usus, -us, *m.*, use, practice; **ad praesentem usum**, for the occasion.
ut or **uti**, *conj.*, as, when (*with indic.*); (in order) that, so that (*with subj.*).
utenda, -orum, *n. pl.*, (*gerundive of utor*), things required for use.
uter, -tra, -trum, which? (*of two*).
uterque, -traque, -trumque, each (*of two*); both.
uti = **ut**.
utilitas, -atis, *f.*, advantage, interests.
utinam, *with subjunctive*, may . . . O that . . . (*expressing a wish*).
utor, -i, usus, *with abl.* (*in earlier Latin with acc.*), use, employ.
uxor, -oris, *f.*, wife.

vacuus, -a, -um, defenceless.
vagus, -a, -um, wandering.
valeo (2), am strong; prosper; am well; **vale!** farewell!
valetudo, -inis, *f.*, health; illness.
validus, -a, -um, flourishing (*Cato*).
vallum, -i, *n.*, rampart, stockade.
vanus, -a, -um, useless.
varie, *adv.*, variously.
varius, -a, -um, diverse, varying.
vas, vasis, *n.*, vessel.
vastus, -a, -um, huge.
vectigal, -alis, *n.*, tax, revenue

vehementer, *adv.*, energetically, fiercely.
vel, *adv.*, certainly; even, indeed.
velo (1), cover.
velut, as though, as if.
vendax, -acis, prone to sell; a seller.
vendo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, sell.
venenum, -i, *n.*, poison.
veneo, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum, am sold.
venia, -ae, *f.*, favour.
venio, -ire, veni, ventum, come.
ventus, -i, *m.*, wind.
venus, -eris, *f.*, love.
vepris, -is, *m.*, bramble.
verber, -eris, *n.*, blow.
verbero (1), beat, scourge, flog.
verbum, -i, *n.*, word.
verecundia, -ae, *f.*, modesty.
vereor (2), fear.
vero, *adv.*, however; indeed, really.
Verres, -is, *m.*, Verres.
verto, -ere, -ti, -sum, turn.
verum, but.
verus, -a, -um, true.
vester, -stra, -strum, your (*pl.*).
vestibulum, -i, *n.*, ante-chamber.
vestigium, -i, *n.*, trace.
vestio (4), dress, robe.
veteranus, -i, *m.*, a veteran; or as *adj.*, veteran.
vetulus, -a, -um, old, worn-out.
vetus, veteris, old.
vexillum, -i, *n.*, standard, flag.
vexo (1), harass, vex, annoy.
via, -ae, *f.*, road, way.
Vibulenus, -i, *m.*, Vibulenus.
vicina, -ae, *f.*, (female) neighbour.
vicinus, -i, *m.*, neighbour.
victor, -oris, *m.*, conqueror.

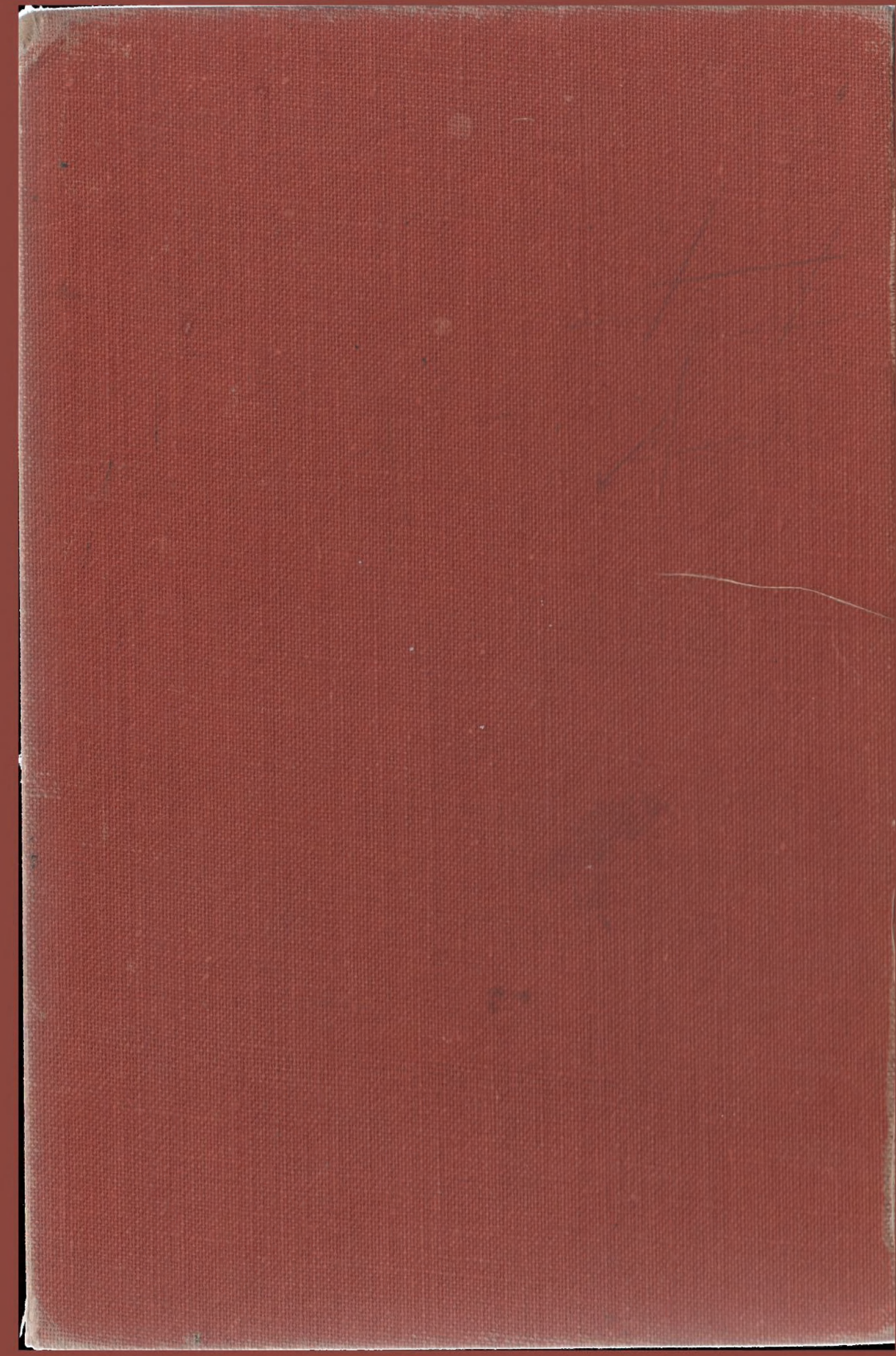
- victoria**, -ae, *f.*, victory.
victrix, -icis, *f.*, victorious (*fem.*).
videlicet, *adv.*, plainly, manifestly; to be sure.
video, -ere, **vidi**, **visum**, see.
vigilia, -ae, *f.*, watch, patrol.
vigilo (1), am watchful; do without sleep.
viginti, twenty.
vilica, -ae, *f.*, housekeeper.
vilicus, -i, *m.*, bailiff, agent.
villa, -ae, *f.*, farm-house; manor, mansion.
vinarius, -a, -um, wine (*as adj.*).
vincio, -ire, -nxi, -nctum, bundle, bind, tie.
vinco, -ere, **vici**, **victum**, conquer, overcome, crush; get the upper hand.
vinculum, -i, *n.*, fetter, bond, chain.
vindico (1), punish; save; clear (*Pliny*).
vinea, -ae, *f.*, vineyard.
vinum, -i, *n.*, wine.
violentia, -ae, *f.*, violence.
violo (1), slay impiously (*Sueton.*).
vir, **viri**, *m.*, husband, man.
virga, -ae, *f.*, stick.
virginalis, -e, of a maid.
virgo, -inis, *f.*, maid.
virgultum, -i, *n.*, twig, branch.
viridis, -e, green.
virtus, -utis, *f.*, good quality; valour; merit; strength; virtue, excellence.
vis, *acc.* **vim**, *abl.* **vi**, *f.*, force, violence; *pl.* **vires**, -ium, strength, power.
viso, -ere, -si, -sum, go to see, examine.
visus, -us, *m.*, seeing, sight.
vita, -ae, *f.*, life.
vitis, -is, *f.*, vine-rod.
vitium, -i, *n.*, fault, vice.
vito (1), avoid, shun.
vivo, -ere, **vixi**, **victum**, live, am alive.
vivus, -a, -um, alive.
vocabulum, -i, *n.*, name.
voco (1), call.
volgus, *see vulgus*.
volo, **velle**, **volui**, wish; intend; **volo mihi**, I mean.
voltis = **vultis**.
voluptas, -atis, *f.*, pleasure.
voluto (1), ponder.
vos, *pl.*, you.
voster = **vester**.
votum, -i, *n.*, vow.
vox, **vocis**, *f.*, word, utterance; voice.
vulgus, -i, *n.*, common people.
vulnero (1), wound.
vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound.
vultus, -us, *m.*, expression.
xenia, -orum, *n. pl.*, presents (*given to guests*).



RUAT CAELUM PTY. LIMITED

Vol. 77...
[&c.]

THE PROPERTY OF
S. H. M. SCHOOL



MODERN
SCHOOL
CLASSICS

STORY OF
THE
CITY OF
NEW YORK

MACMILLAN